NZMATH User Manual

(for version 1.1)

Contents

1	Ove	rview		2
	1.1	Introd	<u>uction</u>	2
		1.1.1	Philosophy – Advantages over Other Systems	2
			1.1.1.1 Open Source Software	2
			1.1.1.2 Speed of Development	2
			1.1.1.3 Bridging the Gap between Users And Developers	6
			1.1.1.4 Link with Other Softwares	6
		1.1.2	Information	6
		1.1.3	Installation	6
			1.1.3.1 Basic Installation	-
			1.1.3.2 Installation for Windows Users	-
		1.1.4	Tutorial	5
			1.1.4.1 Sample Session	6
		1.1.5	Note on the Document	-
				_
2	Bas	ic Util		2
	2.1	config	- setting features	2
		2.1.1	Default Settings	2
			2.1.1.1 Dependencies	2
			2.1.1.2 Plug-ins	2
			2.1.1.3 Assumptions	2
			2.1.1.4 Files	2
		2.1.2	Automatic Configuration	2
			2.1.2.1 Checks	2
		2.1.3	User Settings	2
	2.2	bigran	dom – random numbers	2
		2.2.1	random – random number generator	2
		2.2.2	randrange – random integer generator	2
		2.2.3	map choice – choice from image of mapping	2
	2.3	bigran	ge – range-like generator functions	
		2.3.1	count – count up	3
		2.3.2	range – range-like iterator	9
		2.3.3	arithmetic progression – arithmetic progression iterator.	
		2.3.4	geometric progression – geometric progression iterator .	9

		2.3.5	multirange – multiple range iterator	31
		2.3.6	multirange restrictions – multiple range iterator with re-	
			strictions	31
	2.4	compa	tibility - Keep compatibility between Python versions	33
		2.4.1	set, frozenset	33
		2.4.2	$\operatorname{card}(\operatorname{virtualset})$	33
3	Fun	ctions		34
	3.1	algorit	hm – basic number theoretic algorithms	34
		3.1.1	digital_method - univariate polynomial evaluation	34
		3.1.2	digital_method_func - function of univariate polynomial evaluation	34
		3.1.3	rl_binary_powering - right-left powering	35
		3.1.4	lr binary powering – left-right powering	35
		3.1.5	window powering – window powering	35
		3.1.6	powering func – function of powering	36
	3.2	arith1	- miscellaneous arithmetic functions	37
		3.2.1	floorsqrt – floor of square root	37
		3.2.2	floorpowerroot – floor of some power root	37
		3.2.3	legendre - Legendre(Jacobi) Symbol	37
		3.2.4	modsqrt - square root of a for modulo p	37
		3.2.5	expand - m-adic expansion	37
		3.2.6	inverse – inverse	38
		3.2.7	CRT – Chinese Reminder Theorem	38
		3.2.8	AGM – Arithmetic Geometric Mean	38
		3.2.9	vp - p-adic valuation	38
		3.2.10	issquare - Is it square?	38
		3.2.11	log – integer part of logarithm	39
		3.2.12	product – product of some numbers	39
	3.3	arygcd	l – binary-like gcd algorithms	40
		3.3.1	bit_num - the number of bits	40
		3.3.2	binarygcd – gcd by the binary algorithm	40
		3.3.3	arygcd_i – gcd over gauss-integer	40
		3.3.4	arygcd_w - gcd over Eisenstein-integer	40
	3.4	combir	natorial – combinatorial functions	42
		3.4.1	binomial – binomial coefficient	42
		3.4.2	$combination Index Generator-iterator\ for\ combinations .$	42
		3.4.3	factorial – factorial	42
		3.4.4	permutationGenerator – iterator for permutation	42
		3.4.5	fallingfactorial – the falling factorial	43
		3.4.6	risingfactorial – the rising factorial	43
		3.4.7	multinomial – the multinomial coefficient	43
		3.4.8	bernoulli – the Bernoulli number	43
		3.4.9	catalan – the Catalan number	43
		3.4.10	euler – the Euler number	43
		3.4.11	bell – the Bell number	44

	3.4.12	stirling1 – Stirling number of the first kind	44
	3.4.13	stirling2 – Stirling number of the second kind	44
	3.4.14	partition number – the number of partitions	45
	3.4.15	\overline{G} partition \overline{G} enerator – iterator for partition	45
	3.4.16	partition conjugate – the conjugate of partition	45
3.5	cubic	root – cubic root, residue, and so on	47
	3.5.1	c root p - cubic root mod p	47
	3.5.2	c residue – cubic residue mod p	47
	3.5.3	c_symbol – cubic residue symbol for Eisenstein-integers .	47
	3.5.4	decomposite_p – decomposition to Eisenstein-integers	47
	3.5.5	$cornacchia - solve x^2 + dy^2 = p$	48
3.6	ecpp –	elliptic curve primality proving	49
	3.6.1	ecpp – elliptic curve primality proving	49
	3.6.2	hilbert – Hilbert class polynomial	49
	3.6.3	dedekind – Dedekind's eta function	49
	3.6.4	cmm - CM method	50
	3.6.5	cmm order – CM method with order	50
	3.6.6	cornacchiamodify – Modified cornacchia algorithm	50
3.7	equation	on – solving equations, congruences	52
	3.7.1	e1 – solve equation with degree 1	52
	3.7.2	el ZnZ – solve congruent equation modulo n with degree 1	52
	3.7.3	e2 – solve equation with degree 2	52
	3.7.4	e2 Fp – solve congruent equation modulo p with degree 2	53
	3.7.5	e3 – solve equation with degree 3	53
	3.7.6	e3 Fp – solve congruent equation modulo p with degree 3	53
	3.7.7	Newton – solve equation using Newton's method	53
	3.7.8	SimMethod – find all roots simultaneously	54
	3.7.9	root_Fp - solve congruent equation modulo p	54
	3.7.10	allroots_Fp - solve congruent equation modulo p	54
3.8	gcd - g	gcd algorithm	56
	3.8.1	gcd – the greatest common divisor	56
	3.8.2	binarygcd – binary gcd algorithm	56
	3.8.3	extgcd – extended gcd algorithm	56
	3.8.4	lcm – the least common multiple	56
	3.8.5	gcd_of_list - gcd of many integers	57
	3.8.6	coprime – coprime check	57
	3.8.7	pairwise_coprime - coprime check of many integers	57
3.9	multip	licative – multiplicative number theoretic functions	59
	3.9.1	euler – the Euler totient function	59
	3.9.2	moebius – the Möbius function	59
	3.9.3	sigma – sum of divisor powers)	59
3.10	prime	- primality test, prime generation	61
	3.10.1	trialDivision – trial division test	61
	3.10.2	spsp – strong pseudo-prime test	61
	3.10.3	smallSpsp – strong pseudo-prime test for small number	61
	3.10.4	miller – Miller's primality test	61

	3.10.5 millerRabin – Miller-Rabin primality test 6	31
		52
		62
	3.10.8 by_primitive_root - Lehmer's test 6	62
		62
		3
		3
		3
		3
		3
		64
	3.10.16 generator_eratosthenes – generate primes using Eratos-	
		64
		64
		64
		64
		55
3.11	prime_decomp - prime decomposition	66
	3.11.1 prime_decomp - prime decomposition 6	66
3.12	quad – Imaginary Quadratic Field 6	57
	3.12.1 ReducedQuadraticForm – Reduced Quadratic Form Class 6	57
	3.12.1.1 inverse	8
	3.12.1.2 disc	8
	3.12.2 ClassGroup - Class Group Class 6	8
	3.12.3 class_formula	69
		69
	=0 1	69
	0	69
	0 1 0	70
3.13		71
	3.13.1 ModuleWithDenominator $-$ bases of \mathbb{Z} -module with de-	
		2
	0 _ 0	73
	3.13.1.2 get_polynomials – get the bases as a list of poly-	70
		73
		73
		74 74
914		74
5.14	· •	75 75
		5 75
		5 75
		-6
		6
		6
		76
	ori in remotia_verticity Demotia 5 condition, termary version	J

3.14.8 trivial_test_ternary - trivial tests, ternary ve 3.14.9 trial_division_ternary - trial division, ternary	
	version 77
3.14.10 viafactor ternary – via factorization, ternary	
_	
4 Classes	78
4.1 algfield – Algebraic Number Field	78
4.1.1 NumberField – number field	
4.1.1.1 getConj – roots of polynomial	
4.1.1.2 disc – polynomial discriminant	
4.1.1.3 integer_ring - integer ring	
$4.1.1.4$ field_discriminant - discriminant	
4.1.1.5 basis – standard basis	
4.1.1.6 signature – signature	
4.1.1.7 POLRED – polynomial reduction	81
4.1.1.8 isIntBasis – check integral basis	
4.1.1.9 isGaloisField – check Galois field	
4.1.1.10 isFieldElement – check field element	81
4.1.1.11 getCharacteristic – characteristic	82
4.1.1.12 create Element – create an element .	82
4.1.2 BasicAlgNumber – Algebraic Number Class b	y standard
basis	83
4.1.2.1 inverse – inverse	85
4.1.2.2 getConj – roots of polynomial	85
4.1.2.3 getApprox – approximate conjugates	85
4.1.2.4 getCharPoly – characteristic polynon	n <mark>ial</mark> 85
4.1.2.5 getRing – the field	85
4.1.2.6 trace - trace	
4.1.2.7 norm – norm	86
4.1.2.8 isAlgInteger – check (algebraic) integ	ger 86
4.1.2.9 ch matrix – obtain MatAlgNumber	
4.1.3 Mat AlgNumber – Algebraic Number Class by 1	
resentation	
4.1.3.1 inverse – inverse	89
4.1.3.2 getRing – the field	
4.1.3.3 trace – trace	
4.1.3.4 norm – norm	89
4.1.3.5 ch basic – obtain BasicAlgNumber o	
4.1.4 changetype(function) – obtain BasicAlgNumbe	•
4.1.5 disc(function) – discriminant	
4.1.6 fppoly(function) – polynomial over finite prim	
4.1.7 qpoly(function) – polynomial over rational fiel	
4.1.8 zpoly(function) – polynomial over integer ring	
4.2 elliptic – elliptic class object	
4.2.1 †ECGeneric – generic elliptic curve class	
	t 96

		4.2.1.2	changeCurve – change the curve by coordinate	
			change	96
		4.2.1.3	changePoint – change coordinate of point on the	
			curve	96
		4.2.1.4	$coordinate Y-Y-coordinate\ from\ X-coordinate\ .$	96
		4.2.1.5	whetherOn – Check point is on curve	97
		4.2.1.6	add – Point addition on the curve	97
		4.2.1.7	sub – Point subtraction on the curve	97
		4.2.1.8	mul – Scalar point multiplication on the curve .	97
		4.2.1.9	divPoly – division polynomial	97
	4.2.2		2 – elliptic curve over rational field	98
		4.2.2.1	point – obtain random point on curve	99
	4.2.3		F – elliptic curve over finite field	100
		4.2.3.1	point – find random point on curve	
		4.2.3.2	naive – Frobenius trace by naive method	101
		4.2.3.3	$Shanks_Mestre-Frobenius\ trace\ by\ Shanks\ and$	
			Mestre method	
		4.2.3.4	Schoof – Frobenius trace by Schoof's method	
		4.2.3.5	trace – Frobenius trace	102
		4.2.3.6	order – order of group of rational points on the	
			curve	
		4.2.3.7	pointorder – order of point on the curve	
		4.2.3.8	TatePairing – Tate Pairing	103
		4.2.3.9	TatePairing_Extend - Tate Pairing with final	
			exponentiation	
		4.2.3.10	WeilPairing – Weil Pairing	
		4.2.3.11		0103
		4.2.3.12	DLP_BSGS – solve Discrete Logarithm Prob-	
			lem by Baby-Step and Giant-Step	104
		4.2.3.13	structure – structure of group of rational points	104
		4.2.3.14	issupersingular – check supersingular curve	104
	4.2.4	EC(func	$\mathrm{tion})$	106
4.3			te Field	
	4.3.1		ield – finite field, abstract	
	4.3.2		ieldElement – element in finite field, abstract	
	4.3.3	FinitePr	imeField – finite prime field	110
		4.3.3.1	createElement – create element of finite prime	
			field	
		4.3.3.2	getCharacteristic – get characteristic	111
		4.3.3.3	issubring – subring test	111
		4.3.3.4	issuperring – superring test	111
	4.3.4		imeFieldElement – element of finite prime field	
		4.3.4.1	getRing – get ring object	113
		4.3.4.2	order – order of multiplicative group	113
	4.3.5		dField – extended field of finite field	114
		4.3.5.1	createElement – create element of extended field	115

		4.3.5.2 getCharacteristic – get characteristic	115
		4.3.5.3 issubring – subring test	115
		4.3.5.4 issuperring – superring test	115
		4.3.5.5 primitive element – generator of multiplicative	
		group	115
	4.3.6	ExtendedFieldElement – element of finite field	116
		4.3.6.1 getRing – get ring object	117
		4.3.6.2 inverse – inverse element	
4.4	group	- algorithms for finite groups	118
	4.4.1	†Group – group structure	119
		4.4.1.1 setOperation – change operation	121
		4.4.1.2 †createElement – generate a GroupElement in-	
		stance	121
		4.4.1.3 †identity – identity element	121
		4.4.1.4 grouporder – order of the group	121
	4.4.2	GroupElement – elements of group structure	
		4.4.2.1 setOperation – change operation	
		4.4.2.2 †getGroup – generate a Group instance	
		4.4.2.3 order – order by factorization method	
		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	125
	4.4.3		127
	4.4.4	AbelianGenerate – abelian group structure with generator	128
			128
			128
4.5	imagin	ary – complex numbers and its functions	129
	$4.5.\overset{\circ}{1}$	ComplexField – field of complex numbers	
		4.5.1.1 createElement – create Imaginary object	
			131
		4.5.1.3 issubring – subring test	131
		4.5.1.4 issuperring – superring test	
	4.5.2	Complex – a complex number	
		4.5.2.1 getRing – get ring object	
		4.5.2.2 arg – argument of complex	
		4.5.2.3 conjugate – complex conjugate	
		4.5.2.4 copy – copied number	133
		4.5.2.5 inverse – complex inverse	133
	4.5.3	ExponentialPowerSeries – exponential power series	134
	4.5.4	AbsoluteError – absolute error	134
	4.5.5	RelativeError – relative error	134
	4.5.6	exp(function) – exponential value	134
	4.5.7	expi(function) – imaginary exponential value	134
	4.5.8	log(function) – logarithm	134
	4.5.9	$\sin(\text{function}) - \sin e \text{ function}$	134
	4.5.10		134
	4.5.11		134
	4.5.12	sinh(function) – hyperbolic sine function	134
		7	

	4.5.13	cosh(fun	ction) – hyperbolic cosine function	134
			action) – hyperbolic tangent function	
	4.5.15		mction) – hyperbolic arc tangent function	
			ction) – square root	
4.6			eger residue	
1.0	4.6.1		LesidueClass – integer residue class	
	1.0.1	4.6.1.1	getRing – get ring object	
		4.6.1.2	getResidue – get residue	
		4.6.1.3	getModulus – get modulus	
		4.6.1.4	inverse – inverse element	
		4.6.1.5	minimumAbsolute – minimum absolute repre	-00
			sentative	138
		4.6.1.6	minimumNonNegative - smallest non-negativ	-00
		1.0.1.0	representative	138
	4.6.2	IntegerB	tesidueClassRing – ring of integer residue	
	1.0.2	4.6.2.1	createElement – create IntegerResidueClass obj	
		4.6.2.2	isfield – field test	
		4.6.2.3	getInstance – get instance of IntegerResidueClas	1 10
		1.0.2.0	Ring	140
4.7	lattice	- Lattice	2	
2	4.7.1		- <mark>lattice</mark>	
	1	4.7.1.1	createElement – create element	
		4.7.1.2	bilinearForm – bilinear form	
		4.7.1.3	isCyclic – Check whether cyclic lattice or not	
		4.7.1.4	isIdeal – Check whether ideal lattice or not	
	4.7.2		ellement – element of lattice	
		4.7.2.1	getLattice – Find lattice belongs to	
	4.7.3		ction) – LLL reduction	
4.8			es	
1.0	4.8.1		- matrices	
		4.8.1.1	map – apply function to elements	
		4.8.1.2	reduce – reduce elements iteratively	
		4.8.1.3	copy – create a copy	
		4.8.1.4	set – set compo	
		4.8.1.5	setRow – set m-th row vector	
		4.8.1.6	setColumn – set n-th column vector	
		4.8.1.7	getRow – get i-th row vector	
		4.8.1.8	getColumn – get j-th column vector	
		4.8.1.9	swapRow – swap two row vectors	
		4.8.1.10	swapColumn – swap two column vectors	151
		4.8.1.11	insert Row – insert row vectors	151
		4.8.1.12	insert Column – insert column vectors	
		4.8.1.13	extendRow – extend row vectors	
		4.8.1.14	extendColumn – extend column vectors	
		4.8.1.15	deleteRow – delete row vector	
		4.8.1.16	deleteColumn – delete column vector	

	4.8.1.17	transpose – transpose matrix	152
	4.8.1.18		
	4.8.1.19		
4.8.2	SquareM	Iatrix – square matrices	154
	4.8.2.1	isUpperTriangularMatrix - check upper triangula	r155
	4.8.2.2	isLowerTriangularMatrix - check lower triangular	155
	4.8.2.3	isDiagonalMatrix – check diagonal matrix	155
	4.8.2.4	isScalarMatrix – check scalar matrix	155
	4.8.2.5	isSymmetricMatrix – check symmetric matrix .	155
4.8.3	RingMat	trix – matrix whose elements belong ring	157
	4.8.3.1	getCoefficientRing – get coefficient ring	158
	4.8.3.2	toFieldMatrix – set field as coefficient ring	158
	4.8.3.3	toSubspace – regard as vector space	158
	4.8.3.4	hermiteNormalForm (HNF) – Hermite Normal	
		Form	
	4.8.3.5	exthermiteNormalForm (extHNF) – extended Her-	
		mite Normal Form algorithm	
	4.8.3.6	$kernelAsModule - kernel$ as \mathbb{Z} -module	159
4.8.4	RingSqu	areMatrix – square matrix whose elements belong	
	ring		
	4.8.4.1	getRing – get matrix ring	
	4.8.4.2	$is Orthogonal Matrix-check\ orthogonal\ matrix\ .$	
	4.8.4.3	$is Alternating Matrix\ (is Anti Symmetric Matrix, is Signature)$	
		metricMatrix) – check alternating matrix	
	4.8.4.4	isSingular – check singular matrix	
	4.8.4.5	trace – trace	
	4.8.4.6	determinant – determinant	
	4.8.4.7	cofactor – cofactor	
	4.8.4.8	commutator – commutator	
	4.8.4.9	$characteristic Matrix-characteristic\ matrix\ .\ .\ .$	
	4.8.4.10	adjugateMatrix – adjugate matrix	
	4.8.4.11	cofactorMatrix (cofactors) – cofactor matrix	163
	4.8.4.12	smithNormalForm (SNF, elementary_divisor) -	
		Smith Normal Form (SNF)	163
	4.8.4.13	extsmithNormalForm (extSNF) – Smith Normal	
		Form (SNF)	
4.8.5		trix – matrix whose elements belong field	
		kernel – kernel	
	4.8.5.2	image – image	
	4.8.5.3	rank – rank	166
	4.8.5.4	inverseImage – inverse image: base solution of	1.00
	40 5 5	linear system	166
	4.8.5.5	solve – solve linear system	166
100	4.8.5.6	columnEchelonForm – column echelon form	167
4.8.6		nareMatrix – square matrix whose elements be-	1.00
	long field	1	168

		4.8.6.1	triangulate - triangulate by elementary row op-	
			eration	
		4.8.6.2	inverse - inverse matrix	
		4.8.6.3	hessenbergForm - Hessenberg form	
		4.8.6.4	LUDecomposition - LU decomposition	169
	4.8.7	†Matrix1	Ring – ring of matrices	170
		4.8.7.1	unitMatrix - unit matrix	171
		4.8.7.2	zeroMatrix - zero matrix	
		4.8.7.3	getInstance(class function) - get cached instance	172
	4.8.8	Subspace	e – subspace of finite dimensional vector space	173
		4.8.8.1	issubspace - check subspace of self	174
		4.8.8.2	toBasis - select basis	174
		4.8.8.3	supplementBasis - to full rank	174
		4.8.8.4	sumOfSubspaces - sum as subspace	174
		4.8.8.5	intersectionOfSubspaces - intersection as subspac	e174
		4.8.8.6	fromMatrix(class function) - create subspace	176
	4.8.9	createM	atrix[function] – create an instance	177
	4.8.10		Matrix(unitMatrix)[function] - unit matrix	
	4.8.11	zeroMat	rix[function] – zero matrix	177
4.9	modul	e – modu	le/ideal with HNF	179
	4.9.1	Submod	ule – submodule as matrix representation	180
		4.9.1.1	getGenerators – generator of module	181
		4.9.1.2	isSubmodule – Check whether submodule of self	181
		4.9.1.3	isEqual – Check whether self and other are same	
			module	181
		4.9.1.4	isContain – Check whether other is in self	181
		4.9.1.5	toHNF - change to HNF	181
		4.9.1.6	sumOfSubmodules - sum as submodule	182
		4.9.1.7	intersectionOfSubmodules - intersection as sub-	
			module	182
		4.9.1.8	represent_element – represent element as linear	
			combination	
		4.9.1.9	linear_combination - compute linear combination	n182
	4.9.2		trix(class function) - create submodule	
	4.9.3	Module	- module over a number field	185
		4.9.3.1	toHNF - change to hermite normal $form(HNF)$.	
		4.9.3.2	copy - create copy	187
		4.9.3.3	intersect - intersection	187
		4.9.3.4	issubmodule - Check submodule	187
		4.9.3.5	issupermodule - Check supermodule	187
		4.9.3.6	represent_element - Represent as linear combi-	
			nation	187
		4.9.3.7	change_base_module - Change base	188
		4.9.3.8	index - size of module	188
		4.9.3.9	$smallest_rational$ - a ${f Z}$ -generator in the rational	
			field	188

	4.9.4	Ideal - id	leal over a number field	190
		4.9.4.1	inverse – inverse	191
		4.9.4.2	issubideal – Check subideal	191
		4.9.4.3	issuperideal – Check superideal	191
		4.9.4.4	gcd – greatest common divisor	191
		4.9.4.5	lcm – least common multiplier	191
		4.9.4.6	norm – norm	192
		4.9.4.7	isIntegral – Check integral	
	4.9.5	Ideal wi	ith generator - ideal with generator	193
		$4.9.5.\overline{1}$	copy - create copy	195
		4.9.5.2	to HNFRepresentation - change to ideal with	
			HNF	195
		4.9.5.3	twoElementRepresentation - Represent with two	
			element	195
		4.9.5.4	smallest rational - a Z -generator in the rational	
			field	195
		4.9.5.5	inverse – inverse	
		4.9.5.6	norm – norm	
		4.9.5.7	intersect - intersection	
		4.9.5.8	issubideal – Check subideal	
		4.9.5.9	issuperideal – Check superideal	
4.10	permu		utation (symmetric) group	
			- element of permutation group	
		4.10.1.1	setKey – change key	
		4.10.1.2	getValue – get "value"	
		4.10.1.3	getGroup – get PermGroup	
		4.10.1.4	numbering – give the index	
		4.10.1.5	order – order of the element	
		4.10.1.6	ToTranspose – represent as transpositions	
		4.10.1.7	ToCyclic – corresponding ExPermute element	
		4.10.1.8	sgn – sign of the permutation	
		4.10.1.9	types – type of cyclic representation	
			ToMatrix – permutation matrix	
	4.10.2		ite – element of permutation group as cyclic rep-	
		resentati		204
		4.10.2.1		
			getValue – get "value"	
			getGroup – get PermGroup	
		4.10.2.4	order – order of the element	
		4.10.2.5	ToNormal – represent as normal style	
		4.10.2.6	simplify – use simple value	
		4.10.2.7	sgn – sign of the permutation	
	4.10.3		oup – permutation group	
		4.10.3.1	createElement – create an element from seed	
		4.10.3.2	identity – group identity	
		4.10.3.3	identity c – group identity as cyclic type	

		4.10.3.4 grouporder – order as group	209
		4.10.3.5 randElement – random permute element	209
4.11	rationa	${f al}$ – integer and rational number	211
	4.11.1	Integer – integer	212
		4.11.1.1 getRing – get ring object	213
		4.11.1.2 actAdditive – addition of binary addition chain .	213
		4.11.1.3 actMultiplicative – multiplication of binary ad-	
		dition chain	213
	4.11.2	IntegerRing – integer ring	214
		4.11.2.1 createElement – create Integer object	215
		4.11.2.2 gcd – greatest common divisor	215
		4.11.2.3 ext gcd - extended GCD	215
		4.11.2.4 lcm – lowest common multiplier	215
		4.11.2.5 getQuotientField – get rational field object	215
		4.11.2.6 issubring – subring test	215
		4.11.2.7 issuperring – superring test	216
	4.11.3	Rational – rational number	217
		4.11.3.1 getRing – get ring object	218
		4.11.3.2 decimalString – represent decimal	218
		4.11.3.3 expand – continued-fraction representation	218
	4.11.4	RationalField – the rational field	219
		4.11.4.1 createElement – create Rational object	220
		4.11.4.2 classNumber – get class number	220
		4.11.4.3 getQuotientField – get rational field object	220
		4.11.4.4 issubring – subring test	220
		4.11.4.5 issuperring – superring test	220
4.12	real - 1	real numbers and its functions	221
	4.12.1	RealField – field of real numbers	223
		4.12.1.1 getCharacteristic – get characteristic	224
		4.12.1.2 issubring – subring test	224
		4.12.1.3 issuperring – superring test	224
	4.12.2	Real – a Real number	225
		4.12.2.1 getRing – get ring object	226
	4.12.3	Constant – real number with error correction	227
	4.12.4	Exponential Power Series – exponential power series	227
	4.12.5	AbsoluteError – absolute error	227
	4.12.6	RelativeError – relative error	227
	4.12.7	exp(function) – exponential value	227
	4.12.8	sqrt(function) – square root	227
	4.12.9	log(function) – logarithm	227
	4.12.10	$\log 1 \text{piter(function)} - \text{iterator of } \log (1+x)$	227
		piGaussLegendre(function) – pi by Gauss-Legendre	
	4.12.12	${\it CeContinuedFraction(function)} - {\it Napier's Constant by con}$	
		tinued fraction expansion	
	4.12.13	$\operatorname{Bfloor}(\operatorname{function}) - \operatorname{floor} \operatorname{the} \operatorname{number} \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots$	228
	4.12.14	$(\operatorname{ceil}(\operatorname{function}) - \operatorname{ceil} \operatorname{the number} \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots$	228

	4.12.15 tranc(function) – round-off the number	
	$4.12.16\sin(\text{function}) - \sin \text{e function}$	228
	$4.12.17\cos(\text{function}) - \cos \text{ine function}$	228
	4.12.18tan(function) – tangent function	228
	4.12.19 sinh (function) – hyperbolic sine function	228
	4.12.20 cosh(function) – hyperbolic cosine function	228
	4.12.21 tanh(function) – hyperbolic tangent function	228
	$4.12.22 \operatorname{asin(function)} - \operatorname{arc sine function}$	229
	4.12.23 acos (function) – arc cosine function	229
	4.12.24 atan(function) – arc tangent function	
	4.12.25 atan2 (function) – arc tangent function	
	4.12.26 hypot (function) – Euclidean distance function	
	4.12.27 pow(function) – power function	
	4.12.28 degrees (function) – convert angle to degree	
	4.12.29 radians(function) – convert angle to radian	
	4.12.30 fabs(function) – absolute value	
	4.12.31 fmod(function) – modulo function over real	
	4.12.32 frexp(function) - expression with base and binary exponent?	
	4.12.33 ldexp(function) – construct number from base and binary	
		230
	4.12.34 EulerTransform(function) – iterator yields terms of Euler	
	$\operatorname{transform}$	230
4.13	ring – for ring object	
	4.13.1 †Ring – abstract ring	
	4.13.1.1 createElement – create an element	
	4.13.1.2 getCharacteristic - characteristic as ring 2	
	4.13.1.3 issubring – check subring	
	4.13.1.4 issuperring – check superring	
	4.13.1.5 getCommonSuperring – get common ring 2	
	4.13.2 †CommutativeRing – abstract commutative ring 2	
	4.13.2.1 getQuotientField – create quotient field 2	
	4.13.2.2 isdomain – check domain	
	4.13.2.3 isnoetherian – check Noetherian domain 2	236
	4.13.2.4 isufd – check UFD	236
	4.13.2.5 ispid – check PID	236
	4.13.2.6 iseuclidean – check Euclidean domain	237
	4.13.2.7 isfield – check field	237
	4.13.2.8 registerModuleAction – register action as ring . 2	237
	4.13.2.9 hasaction – check if the action has	
	4.13.2.10 getaction – get the registered action	237
	4.13.3 †Field – abstract field	
	4.13.3.1 gcd – gcd	
	4.13.4 †QuotientField – abstract quotient field	
	4.13.5 †RingElement – abstract element of ring	
	4.13.5.1 getRing – getRing	

	4.13.6	†CommutativeRingElement – abstract element of commu-	
		tative ring	244
		4.13.6.1 mul module action – apply a module action	245
		4.13.6.2 exact division – division exactly	245
	4.13.7	†FieldElement – abstract element of field	246
	4.13.8	†QuotientFieldElement – abstract element of quotient field	247
	4.13.9	†Ideal – abstract ideal	248
		4.13.9.1 issubset – check subset	
		4.13.9.2 issuperset – check superset	249
		4.13.9.3 reduce – reduction with the ideal	
	4.13.10	†ResidueClassRing – abstract residue class ring	250
		†ResidueClass – abstract an element of residue class ring	
		†CommutativeRingProperties – properties for Commuta-	
		tiveRingProperties	252
		4.13.12.1 isfield – check field	
		4.13.12.2 setIsfield – set field	
		4.13.12.3 iseuclidean – check euclidean	
		4.13.12.4 setIseuclidean – set euclidean	
		4.13.12.5 ispid – check PID	
		4.13.12.6 setIspid – set PID	
		4.13.12.7 isufd – check UFD	
		4.13.12.8 setIsufd – set UFD	
		4.13.12.9 isnoetherian – check Noetherian	
		4.13.12.10setIsnoetherian – set Noetherian	255
		4.13.12.1 lisdomain – check domain	255
		4.13.12.12setIsdomain – set domain	255
		getRingInstance(function)	
		getRing(function)	
		inverse(function)	
		exact division(function)	
4.14	vector -	- vector object and arithmetic	259
	4.14.1	Vector - vector class	260
		4.14.1.1 copy – copy itself	262
		4.14.1.2 set – set other compo	262
		4.14.1.3 indexOfNoneZero – first non-zero coordinate	262
		4.14.1.4 toMatrix – convert to Matrix object	262
	4.14.2	innerProduct(function) - inner product	264
4.15	factor.e	ecm – ECM factorization	265
	4.15.1	$ecm-elliptic\ curve\ method\ \dots\dots\dots\dots\dots\dots$	265
4.16	factor.f	ind – find a factor	266
	4.16.1	trialDivision – trial division	266
			266
			266
4.17	factor.r	methods – factoring methods	268
		· ·	268
	4.17.2	$ecm-elliptic\ curve\ method\ \dots\dots\dots\dots\dots$	268

		mpqs – multi-polynomial quadratic sieve method	
	4.17.4	pmom - p - 1 method	269
		rhomethod – ρ method	
	4.17.6	trialDivision – trial division	269
4.18		misc – miscellaneous functions related factoring	
		allDivisors – all divisors	
		primeDivisors – prime divisors	
		primePowerTest – prime power test	
		squarePart – square part	
	4.18.5	FactoredInteger – integer with its factorization	273
		4.18.5.1 is_divisible_by	274
		4.18.5.2 exact division	
		4.18.5.3 divisors	274
		4.18.5.4 proper divisors	
		4.18.5.5 prime divisors	
		4.18.5.6 square part	
		4.18.5.7 squarefree part	
		4.18.5.8 copy	
4.19	factor.	$\mathrm{mpqs} - \mathrm{MPQS}$	
	4.19.1	mpqsfind	275
		mpqs	
		eratosthenes	
4.20	factor.	util – utilities for factorization	277
		FactoringInteger – keeping track of factorization	
		4.20.1.1 getNextTarget – next target	
		4.20.1.2 getResult – result of factorization	279
		4.20.1.3 register – register a new factor	
		4.20.1.4 sortFactors – sort factors	
	4.20.2	FactoringMethod – method of factorization	
		4.20.2.1 factor – do factorization	282
		4.20.2.2 †continue factor – continue factorization	282
		4.20.2.3 †find – find a factor	282
		4.20.2.4 †generate – generate prime factors	282
4.21	poly.fa	ctor – polynomial factorization	284
	4.21.1	brute_force_search - search factorization by brute force .	284
	4.21.2	divisibility_test - divisibility test	284
	4.21.3	minimum_absolute_injection - send coefficients to mini-	
		mum absolute representation	284
	4.21.4	padic_factorization - p-adic factorization	284
	4.21.5	upper_bound_of_coefficient -Landau-Mignotte bound of	
		coefficients	285
	4.21.6	zassenhaus – squarefree integer polynomial factorization	
		by Zassenhaus method	285
	4.21.7	integerpolynomialfactorization – Integer polynomial fac-	
		torization	285
4.22	poly.fo	rmalsum – formal sum	286

	4.22.1	FormalSumContainerInterface – interface class	 287
		4.22.1.1 construct with default – copy-constructing	 288
		4.22.1.2 iterterms – iterator of terms	
		4.22.1.3 itercoefficients – iterator of coefficients	
		4.22.1.4 iterbases – iterator of bases	
		4.22.1.5 terms – list of terms	
		4.22.1.6 coefficients – list of coefficients	
		4.22.1.7 bases – list of bases	
		4.22.1.8 terms map – list of terms	
		4.22.1.9 coefficients_map - list of coefficients	
		4.22.1.10 bases map – list of bases	
	4.22.2	DictFormalSum – formal sum implemented with diction	
		ListFormalSum – formal sum implemented with list .	
4.23		roebner – Gröbner Basis	
		buchberger – naïve algorithm for obtaining Gröbner bas	
	4.23.2	normal strategy – normal algorithm for obtaining Gröb	
		ner basis	291
	4.23.3	reduce_groebner – reduce Gröbner basis	
		s polynomial – S-polynomial	
4.24		ensel – Hensel lift	
		HenselLiftPair – Hensel lift for a pair	
		4.24.1.1 lift – lift one step	
		4.24.1.2 lift factors – lift a1 and a2	
		4.24.1.3 lift ladder – lift u1 and u2	
	4.24.2	HenselLiftMulti – Hensel lift for multiple polynomials	
		4.24.2.1 lift – lift one step	
		4.24.2.2 lift_factors - lift factors	
		4.24.2.3 lift ladder – lift u1 and u2	
	4.24.3	HenselLiftSimultaneously	
	1.2 1.0	4.24.3.1 lift – lift one step	
		4.24.3.2 first lift – the first step	
		4.24.3.3 general lift – next step	
	4 24 4	lift upto – main function	
4 25		ultiutil – utilities for multivariate polynomials	
1.20		RingPolynomial	
	1.20.1	4.25.1.1 getRing	
		4.25.1.2 getCoefficientRing	
		4.25.1.3 leading_variable	
		4.25.1.4 nest	
		4.25.1.5 unnest	
	4.25.2	DomainPolynomial	
	4.20.2	4.25.2.1 pseudo divmod	
		4.25.2.2 pseudo floordiv	
		4.25.2.3 pseudo mod	
		4.25.2.4 exact division	
	4959	UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial	
	4.25.3	O inquer actorization Domain Polynomiai	 305

		4.25.3.1 gcd	306
		4.25.3.2 resultant	306
	4.25.4	polynomial – factory function for various polynomials	306
		prepare indeterminates – simultaneous declarations of in-	
			306
4.26	poly.m		308
	4.26.1	PolynomialInterface – base class for all multivariate poly-	
			309
	4.26.2	BasicPolynomial – basic implementation of polynomial	309
	4.26.3	TermIndices – Indices of terms of multivariate polynomials	309
		4.26.3.1 pop	310
		4.26.3.2 gcd	310
		4.26.3.3 lcm	310
4.27	poly.ra	tfunc – rational function	311
	4.27.1	RationalFunction – rational function class	312
		4.27.1.1 getRing – get rational function field	
4.28	poly.rii	ng – polynomial rings	314
	4.28.1	PolynomialRing – ring of polynomials	315
		4.28.1.1 getInstance – classmethod	316
		4.28.1.2 getCoefficientRing	316
		4.28.1.3 getQuotientField	316
		4.28.1.4 issubring	316
		4.28.1.5 issuperring	316
		4.28.1.6 getCharacteristic	316
		4.28.1.7 createElement	316
		4.28.1.8 gcd	316
		4.28.1.9 isdomain	317
		4.28.1.10 iseuclidean	317
		4.28.1.11 isnoetherian	
		4.28.1.12 ispid	
		4.28.1.13 isufd	317
	4.28.2	RationalFunctionField – field of rational functions	317
		4.28.2.1 getInstance – classmethod	
		4.28.2.2 createElement	
		4.28.2.3 getQuotientField	
		4.28.2.4 issubring	
		4.28.2.5 issuperring	
		4.28.2.6 unnest	318
		4.28.2.7 gcd	318
		4.28.2.8 isdomain	319
		4.28.2.9 iseuclidean	319
		4.28.2.10 isnoetherian	319
		4.28.2.11 ispid	319
		4.28.2.12 isufd	319
	4.28.3		319
		4.28.3.1 reduce	320

		4.28.3.2 issubset	320
		4.28.3.3 issuperset	320
4.29	poly.te	rmorder – term orders	321
	4.29.1	TermOrderInterface – interface of term order	322
		4.29.1.1 cmp	323
		4.29.1.2 format	323
		4.29.1.3 leading_coefficient	323
		4.29.1.4 leading_term	
	4.29.2	UnivarTermOrder – term order for univariate polynomials	
		4.29.2.1 format	
		4.29.2.2 degree	325
		4.29.2.3 tail_degree	325
	4.29.3	MultivarTermOrder – term order for multivariate polyno-	
		mials	
		4.29.3.1 format	
		weight_order - weight order	
4.30		niutil – univariate utilities	
	4.30.1	RingPolynomial – polynomial over commutative ring	
		4.30.1.1 getRing	
		4.30.1.2 getCoefficientRing	
		4.30.1.3 shift_degree_to	
		4.30.1.4 split_at	
	4.30.2	DomainPolynomial – polynomial over domain	
		4.30.2.1 pseudo_divmod	
		4.30.2.2 pseudo_floordiv	
		4.30.2.3 pseudo_mod	
		4.30.2.4 exact_division	
		4.30.2.5 scalar_exact_division	
		4.30.2.6 discriminant	
		4.30.2.7 to_field_polynomial	332
	4.30.3	$Unique Factorization Domain Polynomial-polynomial\ over$	
		UFD	
		4.30.3.1 content	
		4.30.3.2 primitive_part	
		4.30.3.3 subresultant_gcd	
		4.30.3.4 subresultant_extgcd	
		4.30.3.5 resultant	
		IntegerPolynomial – polynomial over ring of rational integer	
	4.30.5	FieldPolynomial – polynomial over field	
		4.30.5.1 content	
		4.30.5.2 primitive_part	
		4.30.5.3 mod	
		4.30.5.4 scalar_exact_division	
		4.30.5.5 gcd	
		4.30.5.6 extgcd	335

	4.30.6	FinitePrimeFieldPolynomial – polynomial over finite prime	
		field	336
		4.30.6.1 mod_pow - powering with modulus	337
		4.30.6.2 pthroot	337
		4.30.6.3 squarefree decomposition	337
		4.30.6.4 distinct degree decomposition	337
		4.30.6.5 split same degrees	338
		4.30.6.6 factor	338
		4.30.6.7 isirreducible	338
	4.30.7	polynomial – factory function for various polynomials	338
4.31		nivar – univariate polynomial	
	4.31.1	PolynomialInterface – base class for all univariate polyno-	
		mials	340
		4.31.1.1 differentiate – formal differentiation	341
		4.31.1.2 downshift degree – decreased degree polynomial	341
		4.31.1.3 upshift degree – increased degree polynomial .	341
		4.31.1.4 ring mul – multiplication in the ring	341
		4.31.1.5 scalar mul – multiplication with a scalar	341
		4.31.1.6 term mul – multiplication with a term	341
		4.31.1.7 square – multiplication with itself	342
	4.31.2	BasicPolynomial – basic implementation of polynomial	342
	4.31.3	SortedPolynomial – polynomial keeping terms sorted	342
		4.31.3.1 degree – degree	
		4.31.3.2 leading coefficient – the leading coefficient	
		4.31.3.3 leading term – the leading term	
		4.31.3.4 †ring mul karatsuba – the leading term	

Chapter 1

Overview

1.1 Introduction

NZMATH[8] is a number theory oriented calculation system mainly developed by the Nakamula laboratory at Tokyo Metropolitan University. NZMATH system provides you mathematical, especially number-theoretic computational power. It is freely available and distributed under the BSD license. The most distinctive feature of NZMATH is that it is written entirely using a scripting language called Python.

If you want to learn how to start using NZMATH, see Installation (section 1.1.3) and Tutorial (section 1.1.4).

1.1.1 Philosophy – Advantages over Other Systems

In this section, we discuss philosophy of NZMATH, that is, the advantages of NZMATH compared to other similar systems.

1.1.1.1 Open Source Software

Many computational algebra systems, such as Maple[4], Mathematica[5], and Magma[3] are fare-paying systems. These non-free systems are not distributed with source codes. Then, users cannot modify such systems easily. It narrows these system's potentials for users not to take part in developing them. NZ-MATH, on the other hand, is an open-source software and the source codes are openly available. Furthermore, NZMATH is distributed under the BSD license. BSD license claims as-is and redistribution or commercial use are permitted provided that these packages retain the copyright notice. NZMATH users can develop it just as they like.

1.1.1.2 Speed of Development

We took over developing of SIMATH[10], which was developed under the leadership of Prof.Zimmer at Saarlandes University in Germany. However, it costs a lot of time and efforts to develop these system. Almost all systems including SIMATH are implemented in C or C++ for execution speed, but we have to take the time to work memory management, construction of an interactive interpreter, preparation for multiple precision package and so on. In this regard, we chose Python which is a modern programming language. Python provides automatic memory management, a sophisticated interpreter and many useful packages. We can concentrate on development of mathematical matters by using Python.

1.1.1.3 Bridging the Gap between Users And Developers

KANT/KASH[2] and PARI/GP[9] are similar systems to NZMATH. But programming languages for modifying these systems are different between users and developers. We think the gap makes evolution speed of these systems slow. On the other hand, NZMATH has been developed with Python for bridging this gap. Python grammar is easy to understand and users can read easily codes written by Python. And NZMATH, which is one of Python libraries, works on very wide platform including UNIX/Linux, Macintosh, Windows, and so forth. Users can modify the programs and feedback to developers with a light heart. So developers can absorb their thinking. Then NZMATH will progress to more flexible user-friendly system.

1.1.1.4 Link with Other Softwares

NZMATH distributed as a Python library enables us to link other Python packages with it. For example, NZMATH can be used with IPython[1], which is a comfortable interactive interpreter. And it can be linked with matplotlib[6], which is a powerful graphic software. Also mpmath[7], which is a module for floating-point operation, can improve efficiency of NZMATH. In fact, the module ecppecpp improves performance with mpmath. There are many softwares implemented in Python. Many of these packages are freely available. Users can use NZMATH with these packages and create an unthinkable powerful system.

1.1.2 Information

NZMATH has more than 25 modules. These modules cover a lot of territory including elementary number theoretic methods, combinatorial theoretic methods, solving equations, primality, factorization, multiplicative number theoretic functions, matrix, vector, polynomial, rational field, finite field, elliptic curve, and so on. NZMATH manual for users is at:

http://tnt.math.se.tmu.ac.jp/nzmath/manual/

If you are interested in NZMATH, please visit the official website below to obtain more information about it.

```
http://tnt.math.se.tmu.ac.jp/nzmath/
```

Note that NZMATH can be used even if users do not have any experience of writing programs in Python.

1.1.3 Installation

In this section, we explain how to install NZMATH. If you use Windows (Windows XP, Windows Vista, Windows 7 etc.) as an operating system (OS), then see 1.1.3.2 "Install for Windows Users".

1.1.3.1 Basic Installation

There are three steps for installation of NZMATH.

First, check whether Python is installed in the computer. Python 2.5 or a higher version is needed for NZMATH. If you do not have a copy of Python, please install it first. Python is available from http://www.python.org/.

Second, download a NZMATH package and expand it. It is distributed at official web site:

```
http://tnt.math.se.tmu.ac.jp/nzmath/download
```

or at sourceforge.net:

```
http://sourceforge.net/project/showfiles.php?group_id=171032
```

The package can be easily extracted, depending on the operating system. For systems with recent GNU tar, type a single command below:

```
% tar xf NZMATH-*.*.*.tar.gz
```

where, % is a command line prompt. With standard tar, type

```
% gzip -cd NZMATH-*.*.*.tar.gz | tar xf -
```

. Please read *.*.* as the version number of which you downloaded the package. For example, if the latest version is 1.0.0, then type the following command.

```
% tar xf NZMATH-1.0.0.tar.gz
```

Then, a subdirectory named NZMATH-*.*.* is created.

Finally, install NZMATH to the standard python path. Usually, this can be translated into writing files somewhere under /usr/lib or /usr/local/lib. So the appropriate write permission may be required at this step. Typically, type commands below:

```
% cd NZMATH-*.*.*
```

% su

python setup.py install

1.1.3.2 Installation for Windows Users

We also distribute installation packages for specific platforms. Especially, we started distributing the installer for Windows in 2007.

Please download the installer (NZMATH-*.*.*.win32Install.exe) from

http://tnt.math.se.tmu.ac.jp/nzmath/download

or at sourceforge.net:

http://sourceforge.net/project/showfiles.php?group_id=171032

Here, we explain a way of installing NZMATH with the installer. First please open the installer. If you use Windows Vista or higher version, UAC (User Account Control) may ask if you run the program. click "Allow". Then the setup window will open. Following the steps in the setup wizard, you can install NZMATH with only three clicks.

1.1.4 Tutorial

In this section, we describe how to use NZMATH.

1.1.4.1 Sample Session

Start your Python interpreter. That is, open your command interpreter such as Terminal for MacOS or bash/csh for linux, type the strings "python" and press the key Enter.

Examples

```
% python
Python 2.6.1 (r261:67515, Jan 14 2009, 10:59:13)
[GCC 4.1.2 20071124 (Red Hat 4.1.2-42)] on linux2
Type "help", "copyright", "credits" or "license" for more information.
>>>
```

For windows users, it normally means opening IDLE (Python GUI), which is a Python software.

Examples

Python 2.6.1 (r261:67517, Dec 4 2008, 16:51:00) [MSC v.1500 32 bit (Intel)] on win32 Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.

```
IDLE 2.6.1 >>>
```

Here, '>>>' is a Python prompt, which means that the system waits you to input commands.

Then, type:

Examples

```
>>> from nzmath import *
>>>
```

This command enables you to use all NZMATH features. If you use only a specific module (the term "module" is explained later), for example, prime, type as the following:

Examples

```
>>> from nzmath import prime
>>>
```

You are ready to use NZMATH. For example, type the string "prime.nextPrime(1000)", then you obtain '1009" as the smallest prime among numbers greater than 1000.

Examples

```
>>> prime.nextPrime(1000)
1009
>>>
```

"prime" is a name of a module, which is a NZMATH file including Python codes. "nextPrime" is a name of a function, which outputs values after the system executes some processes for inputs. NZMATH has various functions for mathematical or algorithmic computations. See 3 Functions.

Also, we can create some mathematical objects. For example, you may use the module "matrix". If you want to define the matrix

$$\left(\begin{array}{cc} 1 & 2 \\ 5 & 6 \end{array}\right)$$

and compute the square, then type as the following:

Examples

```
>>> A = matrix.Matrix(2, 2, [1, 2]+[5, 6])
>>> print A
1 2
5 6
>>> print A ** 2
11 14
35 46
>>>
```

"Matrix" is a name of a class, which is a template of mathematical objects. See 4 Classes for using NZMATH classes.

The command "print" enables us to represent outputs with good-looking forms. The data structure such as "[a, b, c, \cdots]" is called list. Also, we use various Python data structures like tuple "(a, b, c, \cdots)", dictionary " $\{x_1:y_1,x_2:y_2,x_3:y_3,\cdots\}$ " etc. Note that we do not explain Python's syntax in detail because it is not absolutely necessary to use NZMATH. However, we recommend that you learn Python for developing your potential. Python grammar are easy to study. For information on how to use Python, see http://docs.python.org or many other documents about Python.

1.1.5 Note on the Document

† Some beginnings of lines or blocks such as sections or sentences may be marked †. This means these lines or blocks is for advanced users. For example, the class FiniteFieldElement (See **FinitePrimeFieldElement**) is one of abstract classes in NZMATH, which can be inherited to new classes similar to the finite field.

[···] For example, we may sometimes write as function(a,b[,c,d]). It means the argument "c, d" or only "d" can be discarded. Such functions use "default argument values", which is one of the feature of Python.

(See http://docs.python.org/tutorial/controlflow.html#default-argument-values)

Warning: Python also have the feature "keyword arguments". We have tried to keep the feature in NZMATH too. However, some functions cannot be used with this feature because these functions are written expecting that arguments are given in order.

Chapter 2

Basic Utilities

2.1 config – setting features

All constants in the module can be set in user's config file. See the User Settings section for more detailed description.

2.1.1 Default Settings

2.1.1.1 Dependencies

Some third party / platform dependent modules are possibly used, and they are configurable.

HAVE_MPMATH mpmath is a package providing multiprecision math. See its project page. This package is used in **ecpp** module.

HAVE_SQLITE3 sqlite3 is the default database module for Python, but it need to be enabled at the build time.

HAVE_NET Some functions connect to the Net. When your machine is not connected to the network, if you set this false, processing may become rarely high-speed.

2.1.1.2 Plug-ins

PLUGIN_MATH Python standard float/complex types and math/cmath modules only provide fixed precision (double precision), but sometimes multiprecision floating point is needed.

2.1.1.3 Assumptions

Some conjectures are useful for assuring the validity of a faster algorithm.

All assumptions are default to ${\tt False}$, but you can set them ${\tt True}$ if you believe them.

GRH Generalized Riemann Hypothesis. For example, primality test is $O((\log n)^2)$ if GRH is true while $O((\log n)^6)$ or something without it.

2.1.1.4 Files

DATADIR The directory where NZMATH (static) data files are stored. The default will be os.path.join(sys.prefix, 'share', 'nzmath') or os.path.join(sys.prefix, 'Data', 'nzmath') on Windows.

2.1.2 Automatic Configuration

The items above can be set automatically by testing the environment.

2.1.2.1 Checks

Here are check functions.

The constants accompanying the check functions which enable the check if it is True, can be overridden in user settings.

Both check functions and constants are not exposed.

check mpmath() Check whether mpmath is available or not.

constant: CHECK_MPMATH

check_sqlite3() Check if sqlite3 is importable or not. pysqlite2 may be a substitution.

constant: CHECK_SQLITE3

check net() Check the net connection by HTTP call.

constant: CHECK_NET

check plugin math() Check which math plug-in is available.

constant: CHECK_PLUGIN_MATH

default datadir() Return default value for DATADIR.

This function selects the value from various candidates. If this function is called with DATADIR set, the value of (previously-defined) DATADIR is the first candidate to be returned. Other possibilities are, sys.prefix + 'Data/nzmath' on Windows, or sys.prefix + 'share/nzmath' on other platforms.

Be careful that all the above paths do not exist, the function returns None. constant: CHECK_DATADIR

2.1.3 User Settings

The module tries to load the user's config file named *nzmathconf.py*. The search path is the following:

- 1. The directory which is specified by an environment variable NZMATHCONFDIR.
- 2. If the platform is Windows, then
 - (a) If an environment variable APPDATA is set, APPDATA/nzmath.
 - (b) If, alternatively, an environment variable USERPROFILE is set, USERPROFILE/Application Data/nzmath.
- 3. On other platforms, if an environment variable HOME is set, HOME/.nzmath.d.

nzmathconf.py is a Python script. Users can set the constants like HAVE_MPMATH, which will override the default settings. These constants, except assumption ones, are automatically set, unless constants accompanying the check functions are false (see the Automatic Configuration section above).

2.2 bigrandom – random numbers

Historical Note The module was written for replacement of the Python standard module random, because in the era of Python 2.2 (prehistorical period of NZMATH) the random module raises OverflowError for long integer arguments for the randrange function, which is the only function having a use case in NZMATH.

After the creation of Python 2.3, it was theoretically possible to use random.randrange, since it started to accept long integer as its argument. Use of it was, however, not considered, since there had been the bigrandom module. It was lucky for us. In fall of 2006, we found a bug in random.randrange and reported it (see issue tracker); the random.randrange accepts long integers but returns unreliable result for truly big integers. The bug was fixed for Python 2.5.1. You can, therefore, use random.randrange instead of bigrandom.randrange for Python 2.5.1 or higher.

2.2.1 random – random number generator

$\mathrm{random}() o \mathit{float}$

Return a random floating point number in the interval [0,1).

This function is an alias to random random in the Python standard library.

2.2.2 randrange - random integer generator

```
\begin{array}{c} {\rm randrange(start:}\; integer, \; {\rm stop:}\; integer{=}{\rm None, \; step:}\; integer{=}1\;)\\ {\rightarrow}\; integer \end{array}
```

Return a random integer in the range.

The argument names do not correspond to their roles, but users are familiar with the range built-in function of Python and understand the semantics. Calling with one argument n, then the result is an integer in the range [0,n) chosen randomly. With two arguments n and m, in [n,m), and with third l, in $[n,m) \cap (n+l\mathbb{Z})$.

This function is almost the same as random.randrange in the Python standard library. See the historical note 2.2.

Examples

```
>>> randrange(4, 10000, 3)
9919L
>>> randrange(4 * 10**60)
31925916908162253969182327491823596145612834799876775114620151L
```

2.2.3 map choice - choice from image of mapping

```
\begin{array}{c} \text{map\_choice(mapping:} \textit{function}, \text{ upperbound:} \textit{integer} \text{ )} \\ \rightarrow \textit{integer} \end{array}
```

Return a choice from a set given as the image of the mapping from natural numbers (more precisely range(upperbound)). In other words, it is equivalent to: random.choice([mapping(i) for i in range(upperbound)]), if upperbound is small enough for the list size limit.

The mapping can be a partial function, i.e. it may return None for some input. However, if the resulting set is empty, it will end up with an infinite loop.

2.3 bigrange – range-like generator functions

2.3.1 count – count up

```
count(n: integer=0) \rightarrow iterator
```

Count up infinitely from n (default to 0). See itertools.count.

n must be int, long or rational. Integer.

2.3.2 range - range-like iterator

```
egin{array}{l} {
m range(start:\ integer,\ stop:\ integer=None,\ step:\ integer=1\ )} \ 
ightarrow\ iterator \end{array}
```

Return a range-like iterator which generates a finite integer sequence.

It can generate more than sys.maxint elements, which is the limitation of the range built-in function.

The argument names do not correspond to their roles, but users are familiar with the range built-in function of Python and understand the semantics. Note that the output is not a list.

Examples

```
>>> range(1, 100, 3) # built-in
[1, 4, 7, 10, 13, 16, 19, 22, 25, 28, 31, 34, 37, 40, 43, 46,
49, 52, 55, 58, 61, 64, 67, 70, 73, 76, 79, 82, 85, 88, 91,
94, 97]
>>> bigrange.range(1, 100, 3)
<generator object at 0x18f8c8>
```

2.3.3 arithmetic progression – arithmetic progression iterator

Return an iterator which generates an arithmetic progression starting from init and difference step.

2.3.4 geometric_progression – geometric progression iterator

```
	ext{geometric\_progression(init: } integer, 	ext{ ratio: } integer) \ 	o iterator
```

Return an iterator which generates a geometric progression starting from init and multiplying ratio.

2.3.5 multirange – multiple range iterator

```
	ext{multirange(triples: } \textit{list of range triples}) 
ightarrow \textit{iterator}
```

Return an iterator over Cartesian product of elements of ranges.

Be cautious that using multirange usually means you are trying to do brute force looping.

The range triples may be doubles (start, stop) or single (stop,), but they have to be always tuples.

Examples

2.3.6 multirange_restrictions - multiple range iterator with restrictions

```
\begin{array}{c} \text{multirange\_restrictions(triples: } \textit{list of range triples}, **kwds: \textit{keyword} \\ \textit{arguments} \ \overline{)} \\ \rightarrow \textit{iterator} \end{array}
```

multirange_restrictions is an iterator similar to the multirange but putting restrictions on each ranges.

Restrictions are specified by keyword arguments: ascending, descending, strictly_ascending and strictly_descending.

A restriction ascending, for example, is a sequence that specifies the indices where the number emitted by the range should be greater than or equal to the number at the previous index. Other restrictions descending, strictly_ascending

and strictly_descending are similar. Compare the examples below and of multirange.

Examples

```
>>> bigrange.multirange_restrictions([(1, 10, 3), (1, 10, 4)], ascending=(1,))
<generator object at 0x18f978>
>>> list(_)
[(1, 1), (1, 5), (1, 9), (4, 5), (4, 9), (7, 9)]
```

2.4 compatibility – Keep compatibility between Python versions

This module should be simply imported: import nzmath.compatibility then it will do its tasks.

2.4.1 set, frozenset

The module provides set for Python 2.3. Python \geq 2.4 have set in built-in namespace, while Python 2.3 has sets module and sets. Set. The set the module provides for Python 2.3 is the sets. Set. Similarly, sets. ImmutableSet would be assigned to frozenset. Be careful that the compatibility is not perfect. Note also that NZMATH 's recommendation is Python 2.5 or higher in 2.x series.

2.4.2 card(virtualset)

Return cardinality of the virtualset.

The built-in len() raises Overflow Error when the result is greater than sys. maxint. It is not clear this restriction will go away in the future. The function card() ought to be used instead of len() for obtaining cardinality of sets or set-like objects in nzmath.

Chapter 3

Functions

3.1 algorithm – basic number theoretic algorithms

3.1.1 digital method – univariate polynomial evaluation

```
\begin{array}{ll} \textbf{digital\_method}(\textbf{coefficients:} \ \textit{list}, \ \textbf{val:} \ \textit{object}, \ \textbf{add:} \ \textit{function}, \ \textbf{mul:} \ \textit{function}, \\ \textbf{tion}, \ \textbf{act:} \ \textit{function}, \ \textbf{power:} \ \textit{function}, \ \textbf{zero:} \ \textit{object}, \ \textbf{one:} \ \textit{object} \ ) \\ & \rightarrow \textit{object} \end{array}
```

Evaluate a univariate polynomial corresponding to coefficients at val.

If the polynomial corresponding to coefficients is of R-coefficients for some ring R, then val should be in an R-algebra D.

coefficients should be a descending ordered list of tuples (d, c), where d is an integer which expresses the degree and c is an element of R which expresses the coefficient. All operations 'add', 'mul', 'act', 'power', 'zero', 'one' should be explicitly given, where:

'add' means addition $(D \times D \to D)$, 'mul' multiplication $(D \times D \to D)$, 'act' action of R $(R \times D \to D)$, 'power' powering $(D \times \mathbf{Z} \to D)$, 'zero' the additive unit (an constant) in D and 'one', the multiplicative unit (an constant) in D.

3.1.2 digital_method_func - function of univariate polynomial evaluation

```
\begin{array}{ll} \textbf{digital\_method(add:} \ \textit{function}, \ \textbf{mul:} \ \textit{function}, \ \textbf{act:} \ \textit{function}, \ \textbf{power:} \\ \textit{function}, \ \textbf{zero:} \ \textit{object}, \ \textbf{one:} \ \textit{object} \ ) \\ & \rightarrow \textit{function} \end{array}
```

Return a function which evaluates polynomial corresponding to 'coefficients' at 'val' from an iterator 'coefficients' and an object 'val'.

All operations 'add', 'mul', 'act', 'power', 'zero', 'one' should be inputted in

a manner similar to digital method.

3.1.3 rl binary powering - right-left powering

```
 \begin{array}{l} {\tt rl\_binary\_powering(element:}~object,~index:~integer,~{\tt mul:}~function, \\ {\tt square:}~function{=}{\tt None,~one:}~object{=}{\tt None,~)} \\ &\rightarrow object \end{array}
```

Return element to the index power by using right-left binary method.

index should be a non-negative integer. If square is None, square is defined by using mul.

3.1.4 lr binary powering – left-right powering

```
 \begin{array}{lll} & \text{lr\_binary\_powering(element: } object, \text{ index: } integer, \text{ mul: } function, \\ & \text{square: } function = \text{None, one: } object = \text{None, }) \\ & \rightarrow object \end{array}
```

Return element to the index power by using left-right binary method.

index should be a non-negative integer. If square is None, square is defined by using mul.

3.1.5 window powering – window powering

Return element to the index power by using small-window method.

The window size is selected by average analystic optimization.

index should be a non-negative integer. If square is None, square is defined by using mul.

3.1.6 powering func – function of powering

Return a function which computes 'element' to the 'index' power from an object 'element' and an integer 'index'.

If square is None, square is defined by using mul. type should be an integer which means one of the following:

```
0; rl_binary_powering
1; lr_binary_powering
2; window_powering
```

```
>>> d_func = algorithm.digital_method_func(
... lambda a,b:a+b, lambda a,b:a*b, lambda i,a:i*a, lambda a,i:a**i,
... matrix.zeroMatrix(3,0), matrix.identityMatrix(3,1)
... )
>>> coefficients = [(2,1), (1,2), (0,1)] # X^2+2*X+I
>>> A = matrix.SquareMatrix(3, [1,2,3]+[4,5,6]+[7,8,9])
>>> d_func(coefficients, A) # A**2+2*A+I
[33L, 40L, 48L]+[74L, 92L, 108L]+[116L, 142L, 169L]
>>> p_func = algorithm.powering_func(lambda a,b:a*b, type=2)
>>> p_func(A, 10) # A**10 by window method
[132476037840L, 162775103256L, 193074168672L]+[300005963406L, 368621393481L,
437236823556L]+[467535888972L, 574467683706L, 681399478440L]
```

3.2 arith1 - miscellaneous arithmetic functions

3.2.1 floorsqrt – floor of square root

 $floorsqrt(a: integer/Rational) \rightarrow integer$

Return the floor of square root of a.

3.2.2 floorpowerroot – floor of some power root

 $floorpowerroot(n: integer, k: integer) \rightarrow integer$

Return the floor of k-th power root of n.

3.2.3 legendre - Legendre (Jacobi) Symbol

legendre(a: integer, m: integer)
ightarrow integer

Return the Legendre symbol or Jacobi symbol $\left(\frac{a}{m}\right)$.

3.2.4 modsqrt - square root of a for modulo p

 $\operatorname{modsqrt}(\mathtt{a} \colon integer, \;\; \mathtt{p} \colon integer) o integer$

Return one of the square roots of a for modulo p if square roots exist, raise ValueError otherwise.

p must be a prime number.

3.2.5 expand – m-adic expansion

 $\texttt{expand}(\texttt{n:} \textit{integer}, \;\; \texttt{m:} \; \textit{integer}) \rightarrow \textit{list}$

Return the m-adic expansion of n.

n must be nonnegative integer. m must be greater than or equal to 2. The output is a list of expansion coefficients in ascending order.

3.2.6 inverse – inverse

```
inverse(x: integer, n: integer) \rightarrow integer
```

Return the inverse of x for modulo n.

n must be coprime to x.

3.2.7 CRT - Chinese Reminder Theorem

 $ext{CRT}(ext{nlist: } \textit{list})
ightarrow \textit{integer}$

Return the uniquely determined integer satisfying all modulus conditions given by nlist.

Input list nlist must be the list of a list consisting of two elements. The first element is remainder and the second is divisor. They must be integer.

3.2.8 AGM – Arithmetic Geometric Mean

```
\mathbf{AGM}(\mathtt{a:}\ integer,\ \mathtt{b:}\ integer) 
ightarrow \mathit{float}
```

Return the Arithmetic-Geometric Mean of a and b.

3.2.9 vp – p-adic valuation

```
vp(n: integer, p: integer, k: integer=0) \rightarrow tuple
```

Return the p-adic valuation and other part for n.

†If k is given, return the valuation and the other part for np^k .

3.2.10 issquare - Is it square?

```
issquare(n: integer) \rightarrow integer
```

Check if n is a square number and return square root of n if n is a square. Otherwise, return 0.

3.2.11 log – integer part of logarithm

```
log(n: integer, base: integer=2) \rightarrow integer
```

Return the integer part of logarithm of n to the base.

3.2.12 product – product of some numbers

```
product(iterable: \textit{list}, init: \textit{integer}/ \frac{Rational}{None} = None) \\ 	o \textit{prod}: integer/ \frac{Rational}{None}
```

Return the products of all elements in iterable.

If init is given, the multiplication starts with init instead of the first element in iterable.

Input list iterable must be list of numbers including integers, **Rational** etc. The output prod may be determined by the type of elements of iterable and init.

```
>>> arith1.AGM(10, 15)
12.373402181181522
>>> arith1.CRT([[2, 5],[3,7]])
17
>>> arith1.CRT([[2, 5], [3, 7], [5, 11]])
192
>>> arith1.expand(194, 5)
[4, 3, 2, 1]
>>> arith1.vp(54, 3)
(3, 2)
>>> arith1.product([1.5, 2, 2.5])
7.5
>>> arith1.product([3, 4], 2)
24
>>> arith1.product([])
1
```

3.3 arygcd – binary-like gcd algorithms

3.3.1 bit num – the number of bits

```
\text{bit} \quad \text{num(a: } \textit{integer}) \rightarrow \textit{integer}
```

Return the number of bits for a

3.3.2 binarygcd – gcd by the binary algorithm

```
binarygcd(a: integer, b: integer) \rightarrow integer
```

Return the greatest common divisor (gcd) of two integers a, b by the binary gcd algorithm.

3.3.3 arygcd i – gcd over gauss-integer

```
arygcd_i(a1: integer, a2: integer, b1: integer, b2: integer)
→ (integer, integer)
```

Return the greatest common divisor (gcd) of two gauss-integers a1+a2i, b1+b2i, where "i" denotes the imaginary unit.

If the output of arygcd_i(a1, a2, b1, b2) is (c1, c2), then the gcd of a1+a2i and b1+b2i equals c1+c2i.

†This function uses (1+i)-ary gcd algorithm, which is an generalization of the binary algorithm, proposed by A. Weilert[20].

3.3.4 arygcd w – gcd over Eisenstein-integer

```
arygcd_w(a1: integer, a2: integer, b1: integer, b2: integer)
→ (integer, integer)
```

Return the greatest common divisor (gcd) of two Eisenstein-integers $\mathtt{a}1+\mathtt{a}2\omega$, $\mathtt{b}1+\mathtt{b}2\omega$, where " ω " denotes a primitive cubic root of unity.

If the output of arygcd_w(a1, a2, b1, b2) is (c1, c2), then the gcd of a1+a2 ω and b1+b2 ω equals c1+c2 ω .

†This functions uses $(1-\omega)$ -ary gcd algorithm, which is an generalization of the binary algorithm, proposed by I.B. Damgård and G.S. Frandsen [16].

```
>>> arygcd.binarygcd(32, 48)
16
>>> arygcd_i(1, 13, 13, 9)
(-3, 1)
>>> arygcd_w(2, 13, 33, 15)
(4, 5)
```

3.4 combinatorial – combinatorial functions

3.4.1 binomial – binomial coefficient

 $binomial(n: integer, m: integer) \rightarrow integer$

Return the binomial coefficient for n and m. In other words, $\frac{n!}{(n-m)!m!}.$

†For convenience, binomial(n, n+i) returns 0 for positive i, and binomial(0,0) returns 1.

n must be a positive integer and m must be a non-negative integer.

${\bf 3.4.2} \quad {\bf combination Index Generator-iterator\ for\ combinations}$

 $combinationIndexGenerator(n: integer, m: integer) \rightarrow iterator$

Return an iterator which generates indices of \mathtt{m} element subsets of \mathtt{n} element set.

combination_index_generator is an alias of combinationIndexGenerator.

3.4.3 factorial – factorial

 $factorial(n: integer) \rightarrow integer$

Return n! for non-negative integer n.

3.4.4 permutationGenerator – iterator for permutation

 $permutationGenerator(n: integer) \rightarrow iterator$

Generate all permutations of n elements as list iterator.

The number of generated list is n's factorial, so be careful to use big n.

permutation_generator is an alias of permutationGenerator.

3.4.5 fallingfactorial – the falling factorial

```
{\tt falling factorial (n: } \textit{integer}, \ {\tt m: } \textit{integer}) \ \rightarrow \ \textit{integer}
```

Return the falling factorial; n to the m falling, i.e. $n(n-1)\cdots(n-m+1)$.

3.4.6 risingfactorial – the rising factorial

```
risingfactorial(n: integer, m: integer) \rightarrow integer
```

Return the rising factorial; n to the m rising, i.e. $n(n+1)\cdots(n+m-1)$.

3.4.7 multinomial – the multinomial coefficient

```
	ext{multinomial(n: } integer, 	ext{ parts: } list \ ) 
ightarrow integer
```

Return the multinomial coefficient.

parts must be a sequence of natural numbers and the sum of elements in parts should be equal to n.

3.4.8 bernoulli – the Bernoulli number

 $bernoulli(n: integer) \rightarrow Rational$

Return the n-th Bernoulli number.

3.4.9 catalan – the Catalan number

```
catalan(n: integer) \rightarrow integer
```

Return the n-th Catalan number.

3.4.10 euler – the Euler number

 $ext{euler(n: } integer)
ightarrow integer$

Return the n-th Euler number.

3.4.11 bell – the Bell number

 $\texttt{bell(n:} \ \textit{integer} \) \ \rightarrow \ \textit{integer}$

Return the n-th Bell number.

The Bell number b is defined by:

$$b(n) = \sum_{i=0}^{n} S(n, i),$$

where S denotes Stirling number of the second kind (stirling2).

3.4.12 stirling1 - Stirling number of the first kind

 $stirling1(n: integer, m: integer) \rightarrow integer$

Return Stirling number of the first kind.

Let s denote the Stirling number and $(x)_n$ the falling factorial, then

$$(x)_n = \sum_{i=0}^n s(n, i)x^i.$$

s satisfies the recurrence relation:

$$s(n, m) = s(n-1, m-1) - (n-1)s(n-1, m)$$
.

3.4.13 stirling2 - Stirling number of the second kind

stirling2(n: integer, m: integer) o integer

Return Stirling number of the second kind.

Let S denote the Stirling number, $(x)_i$ falling factorial, then:

$$x^n = \sum_{i=0}^n S(n, i)(x)_i$$

S satisfies:

$$S(n, m) = S(n-1, m-1) + mS(n-1, m)$$

3.4.14 partition number – the number of partitions

```
{\tt partition \;\; number(n:} \; integer \;) \rightarrow integer
```

Return the number of partitions of n.

3.4.15 partitionGenerator – iterator for partition

```
partitionGenerator(n: integer, maxi: integer=0) \rightarrow iterator
```

Return an iterator which generates partitions of n.

If maxi is given, then summands are limited not to exceed maxi.

The number of partitions (given by **partition_number**) grows exponentially, so be careful to use big n.

partition_generator is an alias of partitionGenerator.

3.4.16 partition conjugate – the conjugate of partition

```
	ext{partition} conjugate(partition: tuple) 	o tuple
```

Return the conjugate of partition.

```
>>> combinatorial.binomial(5, 2)
10L
>>> combinatorial.factorial(3)
6L
>>> combinatorial.fallingfactorial(7, 3) == 7 * 6 * 5
True
>>> combinatorial.risingfactorial(7, 3) == 7 * 8 * 9
True
>>> combinatorial.multinomial(7, [2, 2, 3])
210L
>>> for idx in combinatorial.combinationIndexGenerator(5, 3):
...     print idx
...
[0, 1, 2]
[0, 1, 3]
[0, 1, 4]
```

```
[0, 2, 3]
[0, 2, 4]
[0, 3, 4]
[1, 2, 3]
[1, 2, 4]
[1, 3, 4]
[2, 3, 4]
>>> for part in combinatorial.partitionGenerator(5):
        print part
. . .
(5,)
(4, 1)
(3, 2)
(3, 1, 1)
(2, 2, 1)
(2, 1, 1, 1)
(1, 1, 1, 1, 1)
>>> combinatorial.partition_number(5)
7
>>> def limited_summands(n, maxi):
        "partition with limited number of summands"
        for part in combinatorial.partitionGenerator(n, maxi):
            yield combinatorial.partition_conjugate(part)
. . .
>>> for part in limited_summands(5, 3):
        print part
. . .
(2, 2, 1)
(3, 1, 1)
(3, 2)
(4, 1)
(5,)
```

3.5 cubic root – cubic root, residue, and so on

3.5.1 c_root_p - cubic root mod p

```
\texttt{c} \quad \texttt{root} \quad \texttt{p}(\texttt{a:} \ \textit{integer}, \ \texttt{p:} \ \textit{integer}) \rightarrow \textit{list}
```

Return the cubic root of a modulo prime p. (i.e. solutions of the equation $x^3 = a \pmod{p}$).

p must be a prime integer.

This function returns the list of all cubic roots of a.

3.5.2 c_residue – cubic residue mod p

$\texttt{c} \quad \texttt{residue}(\texttt{a:} \; \textit{integer}, \, \texttt{p:} \; \textit{integer}) \, \rightarrow \, \textit{integer}$

Check whether the rational integer a is cubic residue modulo prime p.

If $p \mid a$, then this function returns 0, elif a is cubic residue modulo p, then it returns 1, otherwise (i.e. cubic non-residue), it returns -1.

p must be a prime integer.

3.5.3 c_symbol – cubic residue symbol for Eisenstein-integers

```
 \begin{array}{c} {\tt c\_symbol(a1:\it integer,\,a2:\it integer,\,b1:\it integer,\,b2:\it integer)} \\ \rightarrow {\it integer} \end{array}
```

Return the (Jacobi) cubic residue symbol of two Eisenstein-integers $\left(\frac{a1+a2\omega}{b1+b2\omega}\right)_3$, where ω is a primitive cubic root of unity.

If $b1 + b2\omega$ is a prime in $\mathbb{Z}[\omega]$, it shows $a1 + a2\omega$ is cubic residue or not.

We assume that $b1 + b2\omega$ is not divisible $1 - \omega$.

3.5.4 decomposite_p - decomposition to Eisenstein-integers

$ext{decomposite_p(p: } integer) ightarrow (integer, integer)$

Return one of prime factors of p in $\mathbb{Z}[\omega]$.

If the output is (a, b), then $\frac{p}{a+b\omega}$ is a prime in $\mathbb{Z}[\omega]$. In other words, p

decomposes into two prime factors $a + b\omega$ and $p/(a + b\omega)$ in $\mathbb{Z}[\omega]$.

p must be a prime rational integer. We assume that $p \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$.

3.5.5 cornacchia – solve $x^2 + dy^2 = p$

 $cornacchia(d: integer, p: integer) \rightarrow (integer, integer)$

Return the solution of $x^2 + dy^2 = p$.

This function uses Cornacchia's algorithm. See [13].

p must be prime rational integer. d must be satisfied with the condition 0 < d < p. This function returns (x, y) as one of solutions of the equation $x^2 + dy^2 = p$.

```
>>> cubic_root.c_root_p(1, 13)
[1, 3, 9]
>>> cubic_root.c_residue(2, 7)
-1
>>> cubic_root.c_symbol(3, 6, 5, 6)
1
>>> cubic_root.decomposite_p(19)
(2, 5)
>>> cubic_root.cornacchia(5, 29)
(3, 2)
```

3.6 ecpp – elliptic curve primality proving

The module consists of various functions for ECPP (Elliptic Curve Primality Proving).

It is probable that the module will be refactored in the future so that each function be placed in other modules.

The ecpp module requires mpmath.

3.6.1 ecpp – elliptic curve primality proving

```
ecpp(n: integer, era: list=None) \rightarrow bool
```

Do elliptic curve primality proving. If n is prime, return True. Otherwise, return False.

The optional argument era is a list of primes (which stands for ERAtosthenes).

n must be a big integer.

3.6.2 hilbert – Hilbert class polynomial

```
hilbert(D: integer) \rightarrow (integer, list)
```

Return the class number and Hilbert class polynomial for the imaginary quadratic field with fundamental discriminant D.

Note that this function returns Hilbert class polynomial as a list of coefficients.

†If the option **HAVE_NET** is set, at first try to retrieve the data in http://hilbert-class-polynomial.appspot.com/. If the data corresponding to D is not found, compute the Hilbert polynomial directly (for a long time).

D must be negative int or long. See [15].

3.6.3 dedekind - Dedekind's eta function

 $dedekind(tau: mpmath.mpc, floatpre: integer) \rightarrow mpmath.mpc$

Return Dedekind's eta of a complex number tau in the upper half-plane.

Additional argument floatpre specifies the precision of calculation in decimal digits.

floatpre must be positive int.

3.6.4 cmm – CM method

```
\operatorname{cmm}(\operatorname{p:} \mathit{integer}) \to \mathit{list}
```

Return curve parameters for CM curves.

If you also need its orders, use **cmm order**.

A prime p has to be odd.

This function returns a list of (a, b), where (a, b) expresses Weierstrass' short form.

3.6.5 cmm order - CM method with order

```
	ext{cmm} \quad 	ext{order(p: } integer) 
ightarrow \textit{list}
```

Return curve parameters for CM curves and its orders.

If you need only curves, use **cmm**.

A prime p has to be odd.

This function returns a list of (a, b, order), where (a, b) expresses Weierstrass' short form and order is the order of the curve.

3.6.6 cornacchiamodify – Modified cornacchia algorithm

```
cornacchiamodify(d: integer, p: integer) \rightarrow list
```

Return the solution (u, v) of $u^2 - dv^2 = 4p$.

If there is no solution, raise ValueError.

p must be a prime integer and d be an integer such that d < 0 and d > -4p with $d \equiv 0, 1 \pmod{4}$.

```
>>> ecpp.ecpp(300000000000000000053)
True
>>> ecpp.hilbert(-7)
```

```
(1, [3375, 1])
>>> ecpp.cmm(7)
[(6L, 3L), (5L, 4L)]
>>> ecpp.cornacchiamodify(-7, 29)
(2, 4)
```

3.7 equation – solving equations, congruences

In the following descriptions, some type aliases are used.

poly list:

poly_list is a list [a0, a1, ..., an] representing a polynomial coefficients in ascending order, i.e., meaning $a_0 + a_1X + \cdots + a_nX^n$. The type of each ai depends on each function (explained in their descriptions).

integer

integer is one of *int*, *long* or **Integer**.

complex:

complex includes all number types in the complex field: **integer**, float, complex of Python, Rational of NZMATH, etc.

3.7.1 e1 – solve equation with degree 1

```
e1(f: poly list) \rightarrow complex
```

Return the solution of linear equation ax + b = 0.

f ought to be a poly list [b, a] of complex.

3.7.2 e1_ZnZ – solve congruent equation modulo n with degree 1

```
e1 \mathbf{ZnZ}(\mathbf{f} \colon \mathbf{poly} \mid \mathbf{list}, \, \mathbf{n} \colon integer) \to integer
```

Return the solution of $ax + b \equiv 0 \pmod{n}$.

f ought to be a poly list [b, a] of integer.

3.7.3 e2 – solve equation with degree 2

```
e2(f: poly list) \rightarrow tuple
```

Return the solution of quadratic equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$.

f ought to be a poly list [c, b, a] of complex.

The result tuple will contain exactly 2 roots, even in the case of double root.

3.7.4 e2_Fp - solve congruent equation modulo p with degree 2

e2 Fp(f: poly list, p:
$$integer$$
) $\rightarrow list$

Return the solution of $ax^2 + bx + c \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$.

If the same values are returned, then the values are multiple roots.

f ought to be a poly_list of integers [c, b, a]. In addition, p must be a prime integer.

3.7.5 e3 – solve equation with degree 3

$$e3(f: poly list) \rightarrow list$$

Return the solution of cubic equation $ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d = 0$.

f ought to be a poly list [d, c, b, a] of complex.

The result tuple will contain exactly 3 roots, even in the case of including double roots.

3.7.6 e3_Fp - solve congruent equation modulo p with degree 3

e3 Fp(f: poly list, p:
$$integer$$
) $\rightarrow list$

Return the solutions of $ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$.

If the same values are returned, then the values are multiple roots.

f ought be a **poly_list** [d, c, b, a] of **integer**. In addition, p must be a prime **integer**.

3.7.7 Newton – solve equation using Newton's method

Newton(f: poly_list, initial: complex=1, repeat: integer=250) $\rightarrow complex$

Return one of the approximated roots of $a_n x^n + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0 = 0$.

If you want to obtain all roots, then use **SimMethod** instead.

†If initial is a real number but there is no real roots, then this function returns meaningless values.

f ought to be a **poly_list** of **complex**. initial is an initial approximation **complex** number. repeat is the number of steps to approximate a root.

3.7.8 SimMethod – find all roots simultaneously

```
\begin{array}{ll} {\bf SimMethod(f:~poly\_list,~NewtonInitial:~complex}{=}1,~repeat:~integer{=}250)\\ &\rightarrow list \end{array}
```

Return the approximated roots of $a_n x^n + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0$.

†If the equation has multiple root, maybe raise some error.

f ought to be a **poly_list** of **complex**.

NewtonInitial and repeat will be passed to **Newton** to obtain the first approximations.

3.7.9 root Fp – solve congruent equation modulo p

$$\operatorname{root}\operatorname{\mathtt{_Fp}(f:}\operatorname{\mathtt{poly}}\operatorname{\mathtt{_list}},\operatorname{p:}\operatorname{\mathit{integer}}) \to \operatorname{\mathit{integer}}$$

Return one of the roots of $a_n x^n + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0 \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$.

If you want to obtain all roots, then use allroots Fp.

f ought to be a **poly_list** of **integer**. In addition, **p** must be a prime **integer**. If there is no root at all, then nothing will be returned.

3.7.10 allroots_Fp - solve congruent equation modulo p

```
allroots\_Fp(f: poly\_list, p: integer) \rightarrow integer
```

Return all roots of $a_n x^n + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0 \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$.

f ought to be a **poly_list** of **integer**. In addition, p must be a prime **integer**. If there is no root at all, then an empty list will be returned.

```
>>> equation.e1([1, 2])
-0.5
>>> equation.e1([1j, 2])
-0.5j
>>> equation.e1_ZnZ([3, 2], 5)
>>> equation.e2([-3, 1, 1])
(1.3027756377319946, -2.3027756377319948)
>>> equation.e2_Fp([-3, 1, 1], 13)
[6, 6]
>>> equation.e3([1, 1, 2, 1])
[(-0.12256116687665397-0.74486176661974479j),
(-1.7548776662466921+1.8041124150158794e-16j),
(-0.12256116687665375+0.74486176661974468j)
>>> equation.e3_Fp([1, 1, 2, 1], 7)
>>> equation.Newton([-3, 2, 1, 1])
0.84373427789806899
>>> equation.Newton([-3, 2, 1, 1], 2)
0.84373427789806899
>>> equation.Newton([-3, 2, 1, 1], 2, 1000)
0.84373427789806899
>>> equation.SimMethod([-3, 2, 1, 1])
[(0.84373427789806887+0j),
(-0.92186713894903438+1.6449263775999723j),
(-0.92186713894903438-1.6449263775999723j)]
>>> equation.root_Fp([-3, 2, 1, 1], 7)
>>> equation.root_Fp([-3, 2, 1, 1], 11)
>>> equation.allroots_Fp([-3, 2, 1, 1], 7)
>>> equation.allroots_Fp([-3, 2, 1, 1], 11)
>>> equation.allroots_Fp([-3, 2, 1, 1], 13)
[3L, 7L, 2L]
```

3.8 gcd – gcd algorithm

3.8.1 gcd – the greatest common divisor

```
\gcd(\mathtt{a} \colon integer, \, \mathtt{b} \colon integer) 	o integer
```

Return the greatest common divisor of two integers a and b.

a, b must be int, long or **Integer**. Even if one of the arguments is negative, the result is non-negative.

3.8.2 binarygcd – binary gcd algorithm

```
binarygcd(a: integer, b: integer) \rightarrow integer
```

Return the greatest common divisor of two integers a and b by binary gcd algorithm.

†This function is an alias of binarygcd

a, b must be int, long, or Integer.

3.8.3 extgcd – extended gcd algorithm

```
\operatorname{extgcd}(\operatorname{a:}\ integer,\ \operatorname{b:}\ integer) 	o (integer,\ integer,\ integer)
```

Return the greatest common divisor d of two integers a and b and u, v such that d = au + bv.

a, b must be int, long, or **Integer**. The returned value is a tuple (u, v, d).

3.8.4 lcm – the least common multiple

```
\operatorname{lcm}(\mathtt{a} \colon integer, \, \mathtt{b} \colon integer) 	o integer
```

Return the least common multiple of two integers a and b.

†If both a and b are zero, then it raises an exception.

a, b must be int, long, or Integer.

3.8.5 gcd of list - gcd of many integers

```
\texttt{gcd} \quad \texttt{of} \quad \texttt{list}(\texttt{integers:} \; \textit{list}) \, \rightarrow \, \textit{list}
```

Return gcd of multiple integers.

For given integers $[x_1, \ldots, x_n]$, return a list $[d, [c_1, \ldots, c_n]]$ such that $d = c_1x_1 + \cdots + c_nx_n$, where d is the greatest common divisor of x_1, \ldots, x_n .

integers is a list which elements are int or long. This function returns $[d, [c_1, \ldots, c_n]]$, where d, c_i are an integer.

3.8.6 coprime – coprime check

```
\mathbf{coprime}(\mathtt{a:}\;integer,\,\mathtt{b:}\;integer) 
ightarrow bool
```

Return True if a and b are coprime, False otherwise.

a, b are int, long, or Integer.

3.8.7 pairwise coprime – coprime check of many integers

```
	ext{pairwise coprime(integers: } \textit{list}) 	o \textit{bool}
```

Return True if all integers in integers are pairwise coprime, False otherwise.

integers is a list which elements are int, long, or Integer.

```
>>> gcd.gcd(12, 18)
6
>>> gcd.gcd(12, -18)
6
>>> gcd.gcd(-12, -18)
6
>>> gcd.gcd(-12, -18)
(-1, -1, 6)
>>> gcd.extgcd(12, -18)
(1, -1, 6)
>>> gcd.extgcd(-12, -18)
(1, -1, 6)
>>> gcd.extgcd(0, -18)
(0, -1, 18)
```

```
>>> gcd.lcm(12, 18)
36
>>> gcd.lcm(12, -18)
-36
>>> gcd.gcd_of_list([60, 90, 210])
[30, [-1, 1, 0]]
```

3.9 multiplicative – multiplicative number theoretic functions

All functions of this module accept only positive integers, unless otherwise noted.

3.9.1 euler – the Euler totient function

```
	ext{euler(n: } integer) 
ightarrow integer
```

Return the number of numbers relatively prime to ${\tt n}$ and smaller than ${\tt n}$. In the literature, the function is referred often as φ .

3.9.2 moebius – the Möbius function

```
moebius(n: integer) \rightarrow integer
```

Return:

- -1 if n has odd distinct prime factors,
- 1 if n has even distinct prime factors, or
- **0** if n has a squared prime factor.

In the literature, the function is referred often as μ .

3.9.3 sigma – sum of divisor powers)

```
sigma(m: integer, n: integer) \rightarrow integer
```

Return the sum of m-th powers of the factors of n. The argument m can be zero, then return the number of factors. In the literature, the function is referred often as σ .

```
>>> multiplicative.euler(1)
1
>>> multiplicative.euler(2)
1
>>> multiplicative.euler(4)
2
>>> multiplicative.euler(5)
4
>>> multiplicative.moebius(1)
1
>>> multiplicative.moebius(2)
```

```
-1
>>> multiplicative.moebius(4)
0
>>> multiplicative.moebius(6)
1
>>> multiplicative.sigma(0, 1)
1
>>> multiplicative.sigma(1, 1)
1
>>> multiplicative.sigma(0, 2)
2
>>> multiplicative.sigma(1, 3)
4
>>> multiplicative.sigma(1, 4)
7
>>> multiplicative.sigma(1, 6)
12L
>>> multiplicative.sigma(2, 7)
50
```

3.10 prime – primality test, prime generation

3.10.1 trialDivision – trial division test

```
trialDivision(n: integer, bound: integer/float=0) \rightarrow True/False
```

Trial division primality test for an odd natural number.

bound is a search bound of primes. If it returns 1 under the condition that bound is given and less than the square root of n, it only means there is no prime factor less than bound.

3.10.2 spsp – strong pseudo-prime test

```
\begin{array}{l} \operatorname{spsp(n:}\ integer,\ \operatorname{base:}\ integer=\operatorname{None},\ \operatorname{t:}\ integer=\operatorname{None}) \\ \to \ True/False \end{array}
```

Strong Pseudo-Prime test on base base.

s and t are the numbers such that $n-1=2^{s}t$ and t is odd.

3.10.3 smallSpsp – strong pseudo-prime test for small number

```
smallSpsp(n: integer, s: integer=None, t: integer=None) \rightarrow True/False
```

Strong Pseudo-Prime test for integer n less than 10^{12} .

4 spsp tests are sufficient to determine whether an integer less than 10^{12} is prime or not.

s and t are the numbers such that $n-1=2^{s}t$ and t is odd.

3.10.4 miller – Miller's primality test

```
miller(n: integer) \rightarrow True/False
```

Miller's primality test.

This test is valid under GRH. See config.

3.10.5 millerRabin – Miller-Rabin primality test

 $millerRabin(n: integer, times: integer=20) \rightarrow True/False$

Miller's primality test.

The difference from **miller** is that the Miller-Rabin method uses fast but probabilistic algorithm. On the other hand, **miller** employs deterministic algorithm valid under GRH.

times (default to 20) is the number of repetition. The error probability is at most $4^{-\text{times}}$.

3.10.6 lpsp – Lucas test

```
lpsp(n: integer, a: integer, b: integer) \rightarrow True/False
```

Lucas Pseudo-Prime test.

Return True if n is a Lucas pseudo-prime of parameters a, b, i.e. with respect to $x^2 - ax + b$.

3.10.7 fpsp – Frobenius test

```
fpsp(n: integer, a: integer, b: integer) 
ightarrow True/False
```

Frobenius Pseudo-Prime test.

Return True if n is a Frobenius pseudo-prime of parameters a, b, i.e. with respect to $x^2 - ax + b$.

3.10.8 by primitive root – Lehmer's test

```
by primitive root(n: integer, divisors: sequence) \rightarrow True/False
```

Lehmer's primality test [17].

Return True iff n is prime.

The method proves the primality of n by existence of a primitive root. divisors is a sequence (list, tuple, etc.) of prime divisors of n-1.

3.10.9 full euler – Brillhart & Selfridge's test

full euler(n: integer, divisors: sequence) $\rightarrow True/False$

Brillhart & Selfridge's primality test [12].

Return True iff n is prime.

The method proves the primality of n by the equality $\varphi(n) = n - 1$, where φ denotes the Euler totient (see **euler**). It requires a sequence of all prime divisors of n - 1.

divisors is a sequence (list, tuple, etc.) of prime divisors of n-1.

3.10.10 apr – Jacobi sum test

```
apr(n: integer) \rightarrow True/False
```

APR (Adleman-Pomerance-Rumery) primality test or the Jacobi sum test.

Assuming n has no prime factors less than 32. Assuming n is spsp (strong pseudo-prime) for several bases.

3.10.11 primeq – primality test automatically

```
primeq(n: integer) \rightarrow True/False
```

A convenient function for primality test.

It uses one of trialDivision, smallSpsp or apr depending on the size of n.

3.10.12 prime – n-th prime number

```
prime(n: integer) \rightarrow integer
```

Return the n-th prime number.

3.10.13 nextPrime – generate next prime

```
nextPrime(n: integer) \rightarrow integer
```

Return the smallest prime bigger than the given integer n.

3.10.14 randPrime – generate random prime

```
randPrime(n: integer) \rightarrow integer
```

Return a random n-digits prime.

3.10.15 generator – generate primes

$$\operatorname{generator}((\operatorname{None})) o \operatorname{\it generator}$$

Generate primes from 2 to ∞ (as generator).

3.10.16 generator_eratosthenes – generate primes using Eratosthenes sieve

$$generator = eratosthenes(n: integer) \rightarrow generator$$

Generate primes up to n using Eratosthenes sieve.

3.10.17 primonial – product of primes

$$primonial(p: integer) \rightarrow integer$$

Return the product

$$\prod_{q \in \mathbb{P}_{\leq \mathbf{p}}} q = 2 \cdot 3 \cdot \dots \cdot \mathbf{p} \ .$$

3.10.18 properDivisors – proper divisors

$properDivisors(n: integer) \rightarrow list$

Return proper divisors of n (all divisors of n excluding 1 and n).

It is only useful for a product of small primes. Use **proper_divisors** in a more general case.

The output is the list of all proper divisors.

3.10.19 primitive root – primitive root

primitive
$$root(p: integer) \rightarrow integer$$

Return a primitive root of p.

p must be an odd prime.

3.10.20 Lucas chain – Lucas sequence

```
 \begin{array}{l} {\bf Lucas\_chain(n:\ integer,\ f:\ function,\ g:\ function,\ x\_0:\ integer,\ x\_1:} \\ integer) \\ {} & \rightarrow (integer,\ integer) \end{array}
```

Return the value of (x_n, x_{n+1}) for the sequence $\{x_i\}$ defined as:

$$x_{2i} = f(x_i)$$

 $x_{2i+1} = g(x_i, x_{i+1})$,

where the initial values x_0 , x_1 .

f is the function which can be input as 1-ary integer. g is the function which can be input as 2-ary integer.

```
>>> prime.primeq(131)
True
>>> prime.primeq(133)
False
>>> g = prime.generator()
>>> g.next()
2
>>> g.next()
3
>>> prime.prime(10)
29
>>> prime.nextPrime(100)
101
>>> prime.primitive_root(23)
5
```

3.11 prime decomp – prime decomposition

3.11.1 prime_decomp - prime decomposition

Return prime decomposition of the ideal (p) over the number field $\mathbf{Q}[x]/(polynomial)$.

p should be a (rational) prime. polynomial should be a list of integers which defines a monic irreducible polynomial. This method returns a list of (P_k, e_k, f_k) , where P_k is an instance of **Ideal_with_generator** expresses a prime ideal which divides (p), e_k is the ramification index of P_k , f_k is the residue degree of P_k .

```
>>> for fact in prime_decomp.prime_decomp(3,[1,9,0,1]):
... print fact
...
(Ideal_with_generator([BasicAlgNumber([[3, 0, 0], 1], [1, 9, 0, 1]), BasicAlgNumber([[7L, 20L, 4L], 3L], [1, 9, 0, 1])]), 1, 1)
(Ideal_with_generator([BasicAlgNumber([[3, 0, 0], 1], [1, 9, 0, 1]), BasicAlgNumber([[10L, 20L, 4L], 3L], [1, 9, 0, 1])]), 2, 1)
```

3.12 quad – Imaginary Quadratic Field

- Classes
 - ReducedQuadraticForm
 - ClassGroup
- Functions
 - class formula
 - class_number
 - class_group
 - class number bsgs
 - $\ class_group_bsgs$

${\bf 3.12.1 \quad Reduced Quadratic Form - Reduced \, Quadratic \, Form \\ Class}$

Initialize (Constructor)

 $ext{ReducedQuadraticForm}(ext{f:} ext{ list}, ext{ unit: } ext{list})
ightarrow ext{ReducedQuadraticForm}$

 ${\bf Create}\ {\bf ReducedQuadraticForm\ object}.$

f, unit must be list of 3 integers [a, b, c], representing a quadratic form $ax^2 + bxy + cy^2$. unit represents the unit form.

Operations

operator	explanation
M * N	Return the composition form of M and N.
M ** a	Return the a -th powering of M.
M / N	Division of form.
M == N	Return whether M and N are equal or not.
M != N	Return whether M and N are unequal or not.

Methods

3.12.1.1 inverse

inverse(self) ightarrow ReducedQuadraticForm

Return the inverse of self.

3.12.1.2 disc

$ext{disc(self)} ightarrow ext{\it ReducedQuadraticForm}$

Return the discriminant of self.

3.12.2 ClassGroup - Class Group Class

Initialize (Constructor)

 $\begin{array}{ll} {\bf ClassGroup(disc:}\; integer, \;\; {\tt cl:}\; integer, \;\; {\tt element:}\; integer{=}{\bf None)} \\ & \rightarrow \; ClassGroup \end{array}$

Create ClassGroup object.

Methods

3.12.3 class formula

```
class formula(d: integer, uprbd: integer) \rightarrow integer
```

Return the approximation of class number h with discriminant ${\tt d}$ using class formula.

class formula
$$h = \frac{\sqrt{|\mathtt{d}|}}{\pi} \prod_{p} \left(1 - \left(\frac{\mathtt{d}}{p}\right) \frac{1}{p}\right)^{-1}.$$

Input number d must be int, long or Integer.

3.12.4 class number

$$ext{class_number(d: } integer, ext{ limit_of_d: } integer = 1000000000) \ o integer$$

Return the class number with the discriminant d by counting reduced forms.

d is not only fundamental discriminant.

Input number d must be int, long or Integer.

3.12.5 class group

$$ext{class_group(d: } integer, ext{ limit_of_d: } integer = 1000000000) \ o integer$$

Return the class number and the class group with the discriminant ${\tt d}$ by counting reduced forms.

d is not only fundamental discriminant.

Input number d must be int, long or Integer.

3.12.6 class number bsgs

$$\textbf{class number bsgs(d:} \textit{integer}) \rightarrow \textit{integer}$$

Return the class number with the discriminant d using Baby-step Giant-step algorithm.

d is not only fundamental discriminant.

Input number d must be int, long or Integer.

3.12.7 class group bsgs

```
	ext{class\_group\_bsgs(d: } integer, 	ext{ cl: } integer, 	ext{ qin: } list) \ 
ightarrow integer
```

Return the construction of the class group of order p^{exp} with the discriminant disc, where qin = [p, exp].

Input number d, cl must be int, long or Integer.

```
>>> quad.class_formula(-1200, 100000)
>>> quad.class_number(-1200)
12
>>> quad.class_group(-1200)
(12, [ReducedQuadraticForm(1, 0, 300), ReducedQuadraticForm(3, 0, 100),
ReducedQuadraticForm(4, 0, 75), ReducedQuadraticForm(12, 0, 25),
ReducedQuadraticForm(7, 2, 43), ReducedQuadraticForm(7, -2, 43),
ReducedQuadraticForm(16, 4, 19), ReducedQuadraticForm(16, -4, 19),
ReducedQuadraticForm(13, 10, 25), ReducedQuadraticForm(13, -10, 25),
ReducedQuadraticForm(16, 12, 21), ReducedQuadraticForm(16, -12, 21)])
>>> quad.class_number_bsgs(-1200)
12L
>>> quad.class_group_bsgs(-1200, 12, [3, 1])
([ReducedQuadraticForm(16, -12, 21)], [[3L]])
>>> quad.class_group_bsgs(-1200, 12, [2, 2])
([ReducedQuadraticForm(12, 0, 25), ReducedQuadraticForm(4, 0, 75)],
[[2L], [2L, 0]])
```

3.13 round 2 method

- Classes
 - $-\ Module With Denominator$
- Functions
 - round2
 - Dedekind

The round 2 method is for obtaining the maximal order of a number field from an order generated by a root of a defining polynomial of the field.

This implementation of the method is based on [13] (Algorithm 6.1.8) and [21] (Chapter 3).

3.13.1 Module With Denominator – bases of \mathbb{Z} -module with denominator.

Initialize (Constructor)

ModuleWithDenominator(basis: list, denominator: integer, **hints: dict)

ightarrow Module With Denominator

This class represents bases of \mathbb{Z} -module with denominator. It is not a general purpose \mathbb{Z} -module, you are warned. basis is a list of integer sequences.

denominator is a common denominator of all bases.

†Optionally you can supply keyword argument dimension if you would like to postpone the initialization of basis.

Operations

operator	explanation
A + B	sum of two modules
a * B	scalar multiplication
B / d	divide by an integer

3.13.1.1 get_rationals – get the bases as a list of rationals

$${f get_rationals(self)}
ightarrow {\it list}$$

Return a list of lists of rational numbers, which is bases divided by denominator.

3.13.1.2 get_polynomials – get the bases as a list of polynomials

$$ext{get} ext{ polynomials(self)} o ext{\it list}$$

Return a list of rational polynomials, which is made from bases divided by denominator.

3.13.1.3 determinant – determinant of the bases

$\operatorname{determinant}(\operatorname{self}) o \mathit{list}$

Return determinant of the bases (bases ought to be of full rank and in Hermite normal form).

3.13.2 round2(function)

```
\operatorname{round2}(\operatorname{minpoly}\ \operatorname{coeff:}\ \mathit{list}) 	o (\mathit{list},\ \mathit{integer})
```

Return integral basis of the ring of integers of a field with its discriminant. The field is given by a list of integers, which is a polynomial of generating element θ . The polynomial ought to be monic, in other word, the generating element ought to be an algebraic integer.

The integral basis will be given as a list of rational vectors with respect to θ .

3.13.3 Dedekind(function)

```
egin{aligned} 	ext{Dedekind(minpoly\_coeff: } \textit{list, p: } \textit{integer, e: } \textit{integer)} \ & 	o (\textit{bool, ModuleWithDenominator}) \end{aligned}
```

This is the Dedekind criterion.

minpoly_coeff is an integer list of the minimal polynomial of θ . p**e divides the discriminant of the minimal.

The first element of the returned tuple is whether the computation about ${\tt p}$ is finished or not.

3.14 squarefree – Squarefreeness tests

There are two method groups. A function in one group raises **Undetermined** when it cannot determine squarefreeness. A function in another group returns None in such cases. The latter group of functions have "_ternary" suffix on their names. We refer a set {True, False, None} as ternary.

The parameter type integer means either int, long or Integer.

This module provides an exception class.

Undetermined: Report undetermined state of calculation. The exception will be raised by **lenstra** or **trivial test**.

3.14.1 Definition

We define squarefreeness as: n is squarefree \iff there is no prime p whose square divides n.

Examples:

- 0 is non-squarefree because any square of prime can divide 0.
- 1 is squarefree because there is no prime dividing 1.
- 2, 3, 5, and any other primes are squarefree.
- 4, 8, 9, 12, 16 are non-squarefree composites.
- 6, 10, 14, 15, 21 are squarefree composites.

3.14.2 lenstra – Lenstra's condition

```
lenstra(n: integer) \rightarrow bool
```

If return value is True, n is squarefree. Otherwise, the squarefreeness is still unknown and **Undetermined** is raised. The algorithm is based on [18].

†The condition is so strong that it seems n has to be a prime or a Carmichael number to satisfy it.

Input parameter n ought to be an odd integer.

3.14.3 trial division – trial division

```
trial division(n: integer) \rightarrow bool
```

Check whether n is squarefree or not.

The method is a kind of trial division and inefficient for large numbers.

Input parameter n ought to be an integer.

3.14.4 trivial test – trivial tests

```
	ext{trivial } 	ext{test(n: } 	ext{integer}) 
ightarrow 	ext{bool}
```

Check whether n is squarefree or not. If the squarefreeness is still unknown, then **Undetermined** is raised.

This method do anything but factorization including Lenstra's method.

Input parameter n ought to be an odd integer.

3.14.5 viafactor – via factorization

```
viafactor(n: integer) \rightarrow bool
```

Check whether n is squarefree or not.

It is obvious that if one knows the prime factorization of the number, he/she can tell whether the number is squarefree or not.

Input parameter n ought to be an integer.

3.14.6 viadecomposition – via partial factorization

```
viadecomposition(n: integer) \rightarrow bool
```

Test the squarefreeness of n. The return value is either one of True or False; None never be returned.

The method uses partial factorization into squarefree parts, if such partial factorization is possible. In other cases, It completely factor n by trial division. Input parameter n ought to be an integer.

3.14.7 lenstra ternary – Lenstra's condition, ternary ver-

lenstra ternary(n: integer) $\rightarrow ternary$

sion

Test the squarefreeness of n. The return value is one of the ternary logical constants. If return value is True, n is squarefree. Otherwise, the squarefreeness is still unknown and None is returned.

†The condition is so strong that it seems n has to be a prime or a Carmichael number to satisfy it.

This is a ternary version of lenstra.

Input parameter n ought to be an odd integer.

3.14.8 trivial test ternary - trivial tests, ternary version

```
trivial\_test\_ternary(n: integer) \rightarrow ternary
```

Test the squarefreeness of n. The return value is one of the ternary logical constants.

The method uses a series of trivial tests including lenstra_ternary. This is a ternary version of trivial test.

Input parameter n ought to be an integer.

3.14.9 trial division ternary - trial division, ternary version

```
trial division ternary(n: integer) \rightarrow ternary
```

Test the squarefreeness of n. The return value is either one of True or False; None never be returned.

The method is a kind of trial division.

This is a ternary version of trial division.

Input parameter n ought to be an integer.

${\bf 3.14.10 \quad via factor_ternary-via\ factorization,\ ternary\ version}$

```
viafactor ternary(n: integer) \rightarrow ternary
```

Just for symmetry, this function is defined as an alias of **viafactor**.

Input parameter n ought to be an integer.

Chapter 4

Classes

4.1 algfield – Algebraic Number Field

- Classes
 - NumberField
 - BasicAlgNumber
 - MatAlgNumber
- Functions
 - changetype
 - disc
 - fppoly
 - qpoly
 - zpoly

4.1.1 NumberField – number field

Initialize (Constructor)

```
\textbf{NumberField( f: \textit{list}, precompute: bool}{=} \textbf{False )} \rightarrow \textit{NumberField}
```

Create NumberField object.

This field defined by the polynomial f. The class inherits Field.

f, which expresses coefficients of a polynomial, must be a list of integers. f should be written in ascending order. f must be monic irreducible over rational

field.

If precompute is True, all solutions of f (by **getConj**), the discriminant of f (by **disc**), the signature (by **signature**) and the field discriminant of the basis of the integer ring (by **integer ring**) are precomputed.

Attributes

degree: The (absolute) extension degree of the number field.

polynomial: The defining polynomial of the number field.

Operations

operator	explanation
K * F	Return the composite field of K and F.
K == F	Check whether the equality of K and F.

```
>>> K = algfield.NumberField([-2, 0, 1])
>>> L = algfield.NumberField([-3, 0, 1])
>>> print K, L
NumberField([-2, 0, 1]) NumberField([-3, 0, 1])
>>> print K * L
NumberField([1L, 0L, -10L, 0L, 1L])
```

4.1.1.1 getConj – roots of polynomial

$\operatorname{getConj}(\operatorname{self}) o \mathit{list}$

Return all (approximate) roots of the self.polynomial.

The output is a list of (approximate) complex number.

4.1.1.2 disc – polynomial discriminant

$ext{disc(self)} ightarrow integer$

Return the (polynomial) discriminant of the self.polynomial.

†The output is not discriminant of the number field itself.

4.1.1.3 integer ring – integer ring

$integer \quad ring(self) \rightarrow \textbf{FieldSquareMatrix}$

Return a basis of the ring of integers of self.

†The function uses round2.

4.1.1.4 field discriminant – discriminant

$field discriminant(self) \rightarrow Rational$

Return the field discriminant of self.

†The function uses round2.

4.1.1.5 basis – standard basis

$basis(self, j: integer) \rightarrow BasicAlgNumber$

Return the j-th basis (over the rational field) of self.

Let θ be a solution of self, polynomial. Then θ^j is a part of basis of self, so

the method returns them. This basis is called "standard basis" or "power basis".

4.1.1.6 signature – signature

$ext{signature(self)} ightarrow ext{\it list}$

Return the signature of self.

†The method uses Strum's algorithm.

4.1.1.7 POLRED – polynomial reduction

$ext{POLRED(self)} ightarrow ext{\it list}$

Return some polynomials defining subfields of self.

†"POLRED" means "polynomial reduction". That is, it finds polynomials whose coefficients are not so large.

4.1.1.8 isIntBasis - check integral basis

isIntBasis(self) o bool

Check whether power basis of self is also an integral basis of the field.

4.1.1.9 isGaloisField - check Galois field

$isGaloisField(self) \rightarrow bool$

Check whether the extension self over the rational field is Galois. †As it stands, it only checks the signature.

4.1.1.10 isFieldElement - check field element

$\begin{array}{l} \textbf{isFieldElement(self, A: } \textit{BasicAlgNumber}/\textit{MatAlgNumber}) \\ \rightarrow \textit{bool} \end{array}$

Check whether A is an element of the field self.

4.1.1.11 getCharacteristic - characteristic

$getCharacteristic(self) \rightarrow integer$

Return the characteristic of self.

It returns always zero. The method is only for ensuring consistency.

4.1.1.12 createElement - create an element

```
createElement(self, seed: \textit{list}) \rightarrow \textit{BasicAlgNumber}/\textit{MatAlgNumber}
```

Return an element of self with seed.

seed determines the class of returned element.

For example, if seed forms as $[[e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n], d]$, then it calls **BasicAlgNumber**.

```
>>> K = algfield.NumberField([3, 0, 1])
>>> K.getConj()
[-1.7320508075688774j, 1.7320508075688772j]
>>> K.disc()
-12L
>>> print K.integer_ring()
1/1 1/2
0/1 1/2
>>> K.field_discriminant()
Rational(-3, 1)
>>> K.basis(0), K.basis(1)
BasicAlgNumber([[1, 0], 1], [3, 0, 1]) BasicAlgNumber([[0, 1], 1], [3, 0, 1])
>>> K.signature()
(0, 1)
>>> K.POLRED()
[IntegerPolynomial([(0, 4L), (1, -2L), (2, 1L)], IntegerRing()),
IntegerPolynomial([(0, -1L), (1, 1L)], IntegerRing())]
>>> K.isIntBasis()
False
```

4.1.2 BasicAlgNumber – Algebraic Number Class by standard basis

Initialize (Constructor)

 $\begin{array}{ll} \textbf{BasicAlgNumber(} & \textbf{valuelist:} & \textit{list,} & \textbf{polynomial:} & \textit{list,} & \textbf{precompute:} \\ \textit{bool} \\ = & \textbf{False} \end{array})$

 $ightarrow \ BasicAlgNumber$

Create an algebraic number with standard (power) basis.

valuelist = $[[e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n], d]$ means $\frac{1}{d}(e_1 + e_2\theta + e_3\theta^2 + \dots + e_n\theta^{n-1})$, where θ is a solution of the polynomial polynomial. Note that $\langle \theta^i \rangle$ is a (standard) basis of the field defining by polynomial over the rational field.

 e_i , d must be integers. Also, polynomial should be list of integers. If precompute is True, all solutions of polynomial (by **getConj**), approximation values of all conjugates of self (by **getApprox**) and a polynomial which is a solution of self (by **getCharPoly**) are precomputed.

Attributes

value: The list of numerators (the integer part) and the denominator of self.

coeff: The coefficients of numerators (the integer part) of self.

denom: The denominator of the algebraic number for standard basis.

degree: The degree of extension of the field over the rational field.

polynomial: The defining polynomial of the field.

field: The number field in which self is.

Operations

operator	explanation
a + b	Return the sum of a and b.
a - b	Return the subtraction of a and b.
- a	Return the negation of a.
a * b	Return the product of a and b.
a ** k	Return the k-th power of a.
a / b	Return the quotient of a by b.

```
>>> a = algfield.BasicAlgNumber([[1, 1], 1], [-2, 0, 1])
>>> b = algfield.BasicAlgNumber([[-1, 2], 1], [-2, 0, 1])
>>> print a + b
BasicAlgNumber([[0, 3], 1], [-2, 0, 1])
>>> print a * b
BasicAlgNumber([[3L, 1L], 1], [-2, 0, 1])
>>> print a ** 3
BasicAlgNumber([[7L, 5L], 1], [-2, 0, 1])
>>> a // b
BasicAlgNumber([[5L, 3L], 7L], [-2, 0, 1])
```

4.1.2.1 inverse – inverse

$inverse(self) \rightarrow \textit{BasicAlgNumber}$

Return the inverse of self.

4.1.2.2 getConj - roots of polynomial

$\operatorname{getConj}(\operatorname{self}) o \mathit{list}$

Return all (approximate) roots of self.polynomial.

4.1.2.3 getApprox – approximate conjugates

${ ext{getApprox}(ext{self})} o ext{\it list}$

Return all (approximate) conjugates of self.

4.1.2.4 getCharPoly - characteristic polynomial

$\operatorname{getCharPoly}(\operatorname{self}) o \mathit{list}$

Return the characteristic polynomial of self.

†self is a solution of the characteristic polynomial.

The output is a list of integers.

4.1.2.5 getRing - the field

$\operatorname{getRing}(\operatorname{self}) o \mathit{NumberField}$

Return the field which self belongs to.

4.1.2.6 trace – trace

 $ext{trace(self)} o extit{Rational}$

Return the trace of self in the self. field over the rational field.

4.1.2.7 norm – norm

```
\operatorname{norm}(\operatorname{self}) 	o Rational
```

Return the norm of self in the self. field over the rational field.

4.1.2.8 isAlgInteger – check (algebraic) integer

```
isAlgInteger(self) \rightarrow bool
```

Check whether self is an (algebraic) integer or not.

4.1.2.9 ch matrix - obtain MatAlgNumber object

```
	ext{ch} \quad 	ext{matrix(self)} 
ightarrow 	ext{\it MatAlgNumber}
```

Return MatAlgNumber object corresponding to self.

```
>>> a = algfield.BasicAlgNumber([[1, 1], 1], [-2, 0, 1])
>>> a.inverse()
BasicAlgNumber([[-1L, 1L], 1L], [-2, 0, 1])
>>> a.getConj()
[(1.4142135623730951+0j), (-1.4142135623730951+0j)]
>>> a.getApprox()
[(2.4142135623730949+0j), (-0.41421356237309515+0j)]
>>> a.getCharPoly()
[-1, -2, 1]
>>> a.getRing()
NumberField([-2, 0, 1])
>>> a.trace(), a.norm()
2 -1
>>> a.isAlgInteger()
True
>>> a.ch_matrix()
MatAlgNumber([1, 1]+[2, 1], [-2, 0, 1])
```

4.1.3 MatAlgNumber – Algebraic Number Class by matrix representation

Initialize (Constructor)

 $MatAlgNumber(coefficient: list, polynomial: list) \rightarrow MatAlgNumber$

Create an algebraic number represented by a matrix.

"matrix representation" means the matrix A over the rational field such that $(e_1 + e_2\theta + e_3\theta^2 + \cdots + e_n\theta^{n-1})(1, \theta, \dots, \theta^{n-1})^T = A(1, \theta, \dots, \theta^{n-1})^T$, where t expresses transpose operation.

 $coefficient = [e_1, e_2, \ldots, e_n]$ means $e_1 + e_2\theta + e_3\theta^2 + \cdots + e_n\theta^{n-1}$, where θ is a solution of the polynomial polynomial. Note that $\langle \theta^i \rangle$ is a (standard) basis of the field defining by polynomial over the rational field. coefficient must be a list of (not only integers) rational numbers. polynomial must be a list of integers.

Attributes

coeff: The coefficients of the algebraic number for standard basis.

degree: The degree of extension of the field over the rational field.

matrix: The representation matrix of the algebraic number.

polynomial: The defining polynomial of the field.

field: The number field in which self is.

Operations

operator	explanation
a + b	Return the sum of a and b.
a - b	Return the subtraction of a and b.
- a	Return the negation of a.
a * b	Return the product of a and b.
a ** k	Return the k-th power of a.
a/b	Return the quotient of a by b.

```
>>> a = algfield.MatAlgNumber([1, 2], [-2, 0, 1])
>>> b = algfield.MatAlgNumber([-2, 3], [-2, 0, 1])
>>> print a + b
MatAlgNumber([-1, 5]+[10, -1], [-2, 0, 1])
>>> print a * b
MatAlgNumber([10, -1]+[-2, 10], [-2, 0, 1])
>>> print a ** 3
MatAlgNumber([25L, 22L]+[44L, 25L], [-2, 0, 1])
>>> print a / b
MatAlgNumber([Rational(1, 1), Rational(1, 2)]+
[Rational(1, 1), Rational(1, 1)], [-2, 0, 1])
```

4.1.3.1 inverse – inverse

```
inverse(self) 
ightarrow MatAlgNumber
```

Return the inverse of self.

4.1.3.2 getRing – the field

```
\operatorname{getRing}(\operatorname{self}) \to \mathit{NumberField}
```

Return the field which self belongs to.

4.1.3.3 trace – trace

```
\mathrm{trace}(\mathtt{self}) 	o \mathit{Rational}
```

Return the trace of self in the self. field over the rational field.

4.1.3.4 norm – norm

```
\operatorname{norm}(\operatorname{self}) 	o \mathit{Rational}
```

Return the norm of self in the self. field over the rational field.

4.1.3.5 ch basic – obtain BasicAlgNumber object

```
\operatorname{ch\_basic(self)} 	o \mathit{BasicAlgNumber}
```

Return BasicAlgNumber object corresponding to self.

```
>>> a = algfield.MatAlgNumber([1, -1, 1], [-3, 1, 2, 1])
>>> a.inverse()
MatAlgNumber([Rational(2, 3), Rational(4, 9), Rational(1, 9)]+
[Rational(1, 3), Rational(5, 9), Rational(2, 9)]+
[Rational(2, 3), Rational(1, 9), Rational(1, 9)], [-3, 1, 2, 1])
>>> a.trace()
Rational(7, 1)
```

```
>>> a.norm()
Rational(27, 1)
>>> a.getRing()
NumberField([-3, 1, 2, 1])
>>> a.ch_basic()
BasicAlgNumber([[1, -1, 1], 1], [-3, 1, 2, 1])
```

$\begin{array}{ll} 4.1.4 & {\rm changetype}({\rm function}) - {\rm obtain} \ {\rm BasicAlgNumber} \ {\rm object} \\ & {\rm ject} \end{array}$

changetype(a: integer, polynomial: list=[0, 1]) \rightarrow BasicAlgNumber

 ${\it changetype(a: \it Rational, polynomial: \it list=[0,\,1])} \rightarrow {\it BasicAlgNumber}$

changetype(polynomial: list) $\rightarrow BasicAlgNumber$

Return a BasicAlgNumber object corresponding to a.

If a is an integer or an instance of **Rational**, the function returns **BasicAlgNumber** object whose field is defined by polynomial. If a is a list, the function returns **BasicAlgNumber** corresponding to a solution of a, considering a as the polynomial.

The input parameter a must be an integer, Rational or a list of integers.

4.1.5 disc(function) - discriminant

 $\operatorname{disc}(A:\ \mathit{list}) o Rational$

Return the discriminant of a_i , where $A = [a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n]$.

 \mathbf{a}_i must be an instance of **BasicAlgNumber** or **MatAlgNumber** defined over a same number field.

4.1.6 fppoly(function) – polynomial over finite prime field

 $fppoly(coeffs: list, p: integer) \rightarrow FinitePrimeFieldPolynomial$

Return the polynomial whose coefficients coeffs are defined over the prime field $\mathbb{Z}_{\mathtt{p}}.$

coeffs should be a list of integers or of instances of **FinitePrimeFieldEle-**ment.

4.1.7 qpoly(function) – polynomial over rational field

 $qpoly(coeffs: list) \rightarrow FieldPolynomial$

Return the polynomial whose coefficients coeffs are defined over the rational

field.

coeffs must be a list of integers or instances of Rational.

4.1.8 zpoly(function) – polynomial over integer ring

```
zpoly(coeffs: list) \rightarrow IntegerPolynomial
```

Return the polynomial whose coefficients coeffs are defined over the (rational) integer ring.

coeffs must be a list of integers.

```
>>> a = algfield.changetype(3, [-2, 0, 1])
>>> b = algfield.BasicAlgNumber([[1, 2], 1], [-2, 0, 1])
>>> A = [a, b]
>>> algfield.disc(A)
288L
```

4.2 elliptic – elliptic class object

- Classes
 - ECGeneric
 - ECoverQ
 - ECoverGF
- Functions
 - **EC**

This module using following type:

weierstrassform:

```
weierstrassform is a list (a_1, a_2, a_3, a_4, a_6) or (a_4, a_6), it represents E: y^2 + a_1xy + a_3y = x^3 + a_2x^2 + a_4x + a_6 or E: y^2 = x^3 + a_4x + a_6, respectively.
```

infpoint:

infpoint is the list [0], which represents infinite point on the elliptic curve.

point

point is two-dimensional coordinate list [x, y] or $\overline{\mathbf{infpoint}}$.

4.2.1 †ECGeneric – generic elliptic curve class

Initialize (Constructor)

ECGeneric(coefficient: weierstrassform, basefield: Field=None) $\rightarrow ECGeneric$

Create an elliptic curve object.

The class is for the definition of elliptic curves over general fields. Instead of using this class directly, we recommend that you call **EC**. †The class precomputes the following values.

- shorter form: $y^2 = b_2 x^3 + b_4 x^2 + b_6 x + b_8$
- shortest form: $y^2 = x^3 + c_4 x + c_6$
- discriminant
- \bullet j-invariant

All elements of coefficient must be in basefield.

See weierstrassform for more information about coefficient. If discriminant of self equals 0, it raises ValueError.

Attributes

basefield:

It expresses the field which each coordinate of all points in self is on. (This means not only self is defined over basefield.)

 \mathbf{ch} :

It expresses the characteristic of basefield.

infpoint:

It expresses infinity point (i.e. [0]).

a1, a2, a3, a4, a6 :

It expresses the coefficients a1, a2, a3, a4, a6.

b2, **b4**, **b6**, **b8**:

It expresses the coefficients b2, b4, b6, b8.

c4, c6

It expresses the coefficients c4, c6.

disc:

It expresses the discriminant of self.

j :

It expresses the j-invariant of self.

${\bf coefficient} \ :$

It expresses the **weierstrassform** of self.

4.2.1.1 simple – simplify the curve coefficient

$simple(self) \rightarrow ECGeneric$

Return elliptic curve corresponding to the short Weierstrass form of self by changing the coordinates.

4.2.1.2 changeCurve – change the curve by coordinate change

$changeCurve(self, V: list) \rightarrow ECGeneric$

Return elliptic curve corresponding to the curve obtained by some coordinate change $x = u^2x' + r$, $y = u^3y' + su^2x' + t$.

For $u \neq 0$, the coordinate change gives some curve which is **basefield**-isomorphic to self.

V must be a list of the form [u, r, s, t], where u, r, s, t are in basefield.

4.2.1.3 changePoint - change coordinate of point on the curve

$\mathbf{changePoint}(\mathbf{self}, \, \mathtt{P:} \, \mathbf{point}, \, \mathtt{V:} \, \mathit{list}) \rightarrow \mathbf{point}$

Return the point corresponding to the point obtained by the coordinate change $x' = (x - r)u^{-2}$, $y' = (y - s(x - r) + t)u^{-3}$.

Note that the inverse coordinate change is $x = u^2x' + r$, $y = u^3y' + su^2x' + t$. See **change Curve**.

V must be a list of the form [u, r, s, t], where u, r, s, t are in **basefield**.u must be non-zero.

4.2.1.4 coordinate Y - Y-coordinate from X-coordinate

$coordinateY(self, x: FieldElement) \rightarrow FieldElement / False$

Return Y-coordinate of the point on self whose X-coordinate is x.

The output would be one Y-coordinate (if a coordinate is found). If such a Y-coordinate does not exist, it returns False.

4.2.1.5 whetherOn - Check point is on curve

```
{f whether On(self, \, 	t P: \, {f point})} 
ightarrow bool
```

Check whether the point P is on self or not.

4.2.1.6 add – Point addition on the curve

```
add(self, P: point, Q: point) \rightarrow point
```

Return the sum of the point P and Q on self.

4.2.1.7 sub – Point subtraction on the curve

```
sub(self, P: point, Q: point) \rightarrow point
```

Return the subtraction of the point P from Q on self.

4.2.1.8 mul – Scalar point multiplication on the curve

```
\text{mul}(\text{self, k: } integer, P: point) \rightarrow point
```

Return the scalar multiplication of the point P by a scalar k on self.

4.2.1.9 divPoly – division polynomial

```
divPoly(self, m: integer=None) → FieldPolynomial/(f: list, #: integer)
```

Return the division polynomial.

If m is odd, this method returns the usual division polynomial. If m is even, return the quotient of the usual division polynomial by $2y+a_1x+a_3$. †If m is not specified (i.e. m=None), then return (f, H). H is the least prime satisfying $\prod_{2\leq l\leq H,\ l:prime} l>4\sqrt{q}$, where q is the order of basefield. f is the list of k-division polynomials up to $k\leq H$. These are used for Schoof's algorithm.

4.2.2 ECoverQ – elliptic curve over rational field

The class is for elliptic curves over the rational field \mathbb{Q} (RationalField in nzmath.rational).

The class is a subclass of **ECGeneric**.

Initialize (Constructor)

$ECoverQ(coefficient: weierstrassform) \rightarrow ECoverQ$

Create elliptic curve over the rational field.

All elements of coefficient must be integer or **Rational**. See **weierstrassform** for more information about coefficient.

```
>>> E = elliptic.ECoverQ([ratinal.Rational(1, 2), 3])
>>> print E.disc
-3896/1
>>> print E.j
1728/487
```

4.2.2.1 point - obtain random point on curve

```
point(self, limit: integer=1000) \rightarrow point
```

Return a random point on self.

limit expresses the time of trying to choose points. If failed, raise ValueError. †Because it is difficult to search the rational point over the rational field, it might raise error with high frequency.

```
>>> print E.changeCurve([1, 2, 3, 4])
y ** 2 + 6/1 * x * y + 8/1 * y = x ** 3 - 3/1 * x ** 2 - 23/2 * x - 4/1
>>> E.divPoly(3)
FieldPolynomial([(0, Rational(-1, 4)), (1, Rational(36, 1)), (2, Rational(3, 1)), (4, Rational(3, 1))], RationalField())
```

4.2.3 ECoverGF – elliptic curve over finite field

The class is for elliptic curves over a finite field, denoted by \mathbb{F}_q (FiniteField and its subclasses in nzmath).

The class is a subclass of **ECGeneric**.

Initialize (Constructor)

```
ECoverGF (coefficient: weierstrassform, basefield: FiniteField ) \rightarrow ECoverGF
```

Create elliptic curve over a finite field.

All elements of coefficient must be in basefield. basefield should be an instance of FiniteField.

See weierstrassform for more information about coefficient.

```
>>> E = elliptic.ECoverGF([2, 5], finitefield.FinitePrimeField(11))
>>> print E.j
7 in F_11
>>> E.whetherOn([8, 4])
True
>>> E.add([3, 4], [9, 9])
[FinitePrimeFieldElement(0, 11), FinitePrimeFieldElement(4, 11)]
>>> E.mul(5, [9, 9])
[FinitePrimeFieldElement(0, 11)]
```

4.2.3.1 point – find random point on curve

$point(self) \rightarrow point$

Return a random point on self.

This method uses a probabilistic algorithm.

4.2.3.2 naive – Frobenius trace by naive method

${ m naive(self)} ightarrow {\it integer}$

Return Frobenius trace t by a naive method.

†The function counts up the Legendre symbols of all rational points on self. Frobenius trace of the curve is t such that $\#E(\mathbb{F}_q) = q+1-t$, where $\#E(\mathbb{F}_q)$ stands for the number of points on self over self.basefield \mathbb{F}_q .

The characteristic of self, basefield must not be 2 nor 3.

4.2.3.3 Shanks_Mestre – Frobenius trace by Shanks and Mestre method

Shanks $Mestre(self) \rightarrow integer$

Return Frobenius trace t by Shanks and Mestre method.

†This uses the method proposed by Shanks and Mestre. †See Algorithm 7.5.3 of [15] for more information about the algorithm.

Frobenius trace of the curve is t such that $\#E(\mathbb{F}_q) = q + 1 - t$, where $\#E(\mathbb{F}_q)$ stands for the number of points on self over self.basefield \mathbb{F}_q .

self.basefield must be an instance of FinitePrimeField.

4.2.3.4 Schoof - Frobenius trace by Schoof's method

$Schoof(self) \rightarrow integer$

Return Frobenius trace t by Schoof's method.

†This uses the method proposed by Schoof.

Frobenius trace of the curve is t such that $\#E(\mathbb{F}_q) = q+1-t$, where $\#E(\mathbb{F}_q)$ stands for the number of points on self over self.basefield \mathbb{F}_q .

4.2.3.5 trace - Frobenius trace

```
{
m trace}({
m self}, \ {
m r:} \ integer = {
m None}) 
ightarrow integer
```

Return Frobenius trace t.

Frobenius trace of the curve is t such that $\#E(\mathbb{F}_q) = q+1-t$, where $\#E(\mathbb{F}_q)$ stands for the number of points on self over self.basefield \mathbb{F}_q . If positive r given, it returns $q^r + 1 - \#E(\mathbb{F}_{q^r})$.

†The method selects algorithms by investigating self.ch when self.basefield is an instance of FinitePrimeField. If ch<1000, the method uses naive. If $10^4 < ch < 10^{30}$, the method uses Shanks_Mestre. Otherwise, it uses Schoof.

The parameter r must be positive integer.

4.2.3.6 order – order of group of rational points on the curve

$$order(self, r: integer=None) \rightarrow integer$$

Return order $\#E(\mathbb{F}_q) = q + 1 - t$.

If positive r given, this computes $\#E(\mathbb{F}_q^r)$ instead. †On the computation of Frobenius trace t, the method calls **trace**.

The parameter r must be positive integer.

4.2.3.7 pointorder – order of point on the curve

```
	ext{point} (	ext{self}, 	ext{ P: } 	ext{point}, 	ext{ ord } 	ext{\_factor: } 	ext{list} = 	ext{None}) 	o integer
```

Return order of a point P.

†The method uses factorization of order.

If ord_factor is given, computation of factorizing the order of self is omitted and it applies ord factor instead.

4.2.3.8 TatePairing – Tate Pairing

TatePairing(self, m: integer, P: point, Q: point) → FiniteFieldElement

Return Tate-Lichetenbaum pairing $\langle P, Q \rangle_m$.

†The method uses Miller's algorithm.

The image of the Tate pairing is $\mathbb{F}_q^*/\mathbb{F}_q^{*m}$, but the method returns an element of \mathbb{F}_q , so the value is not uniquely defined. If uniqueness is needed, use **TatePairing Extend**.

The point P has to be a m-torsion point (i.e. mP = [0]). Also, the number m must divide order.


```
 \begin{array}{c} \mathbf{TatePairing\_Extend(self, \, m: \, integer, \, P: \, point, \, Q: \, point \, )} \\ & \rightarrow \mathbf{FiniteFieldElement} \end{array}
```

Return Tate Pairing with final exponentiation, i.e. $\langle P, Q \rangle_m^{(q-1)/m}$.

†The method calls **TatePairing**.

The point P has to be a m-torsion point (i.e. mP = [0]). Also the number m must divide order.

The output is in the group generated by m-th root of unity in \mathbb{F}_q^* .

4.2.3.10 WeilPairing – Weil Pairing

WeilPairing(self, m: integer, P: point, Q: point) \rightarrow FiniteFieldElement

Return Weil pairing $e_m(P, Q)$.

†The method uses Miller's algorithm.

The points P and Q has to be a m-torsion point (i.e. mP = mQ = [0]). Also, the number m must divide order.

The output is in the group generated by m-th root of unity in \mathbb{F}_q^* .

4.2.3.11 BSGS - point order by Baby-Step and Giant-Step

$BSGS(self, P: point) \rightarrow integer$

Return order of point P by Baby-Step and Giant-Step method.

†See [19] for more information about the algorithm.

4.2.3.12 DLP_BSGS – solve Discrete Logarithm Problem by Baby-Step and Giant-Step

```
DLP BSGS(self, n: integer, P: point, Q: point) \rightarrow m: integer
```

Return m such that Q = mP by Baby-Step and Giant-Step method.

The points P and Q has to be a n-torsion point (i.e. nP = nQ = [0]). Also, the number n must divide **order**. The output m is an integer.

4.2.3.13 structure – structure of group of rational points

$structure(self) \rightarrow structure: tuple$

Return the group structure of self.

The structure of $E(\mathbb{F}_q)$ is represented as $\mathbb{Z}/d\mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$. The method uses **WeilPairing**.

The output structure is a tuple of positive two integers (d, n). d divides n.

4.2.3.14 issupersingular – check supersingular curve

```
\operatorname{structure}(\operatorname{self}) 	o \mathit{bool}
```

Check whether self is a supersingular curve or not.

```
>>> E=nzmath.elliptic.ECoverGF([2, 5], nzmath.finitefield.FinitePrimeField(11))
>>> E.whetherOn([0, 4])
True
>>> print E.coordinateY(3)
4 in F_11
>>> E.trace()
2
>>> E.order()
10
```

```
>>> E.pointorder([3, 4])
10L
>>> E.TatePairing(10, [3, 4], [9, 9])
FinitePrimeFieldElement(3, 11)
>>> E.DLP_BSGS(10, [3, 4], [9, 9])
6
```

4.2.4 EC(function)

 $\begin{array}{c} \mathbf{EC}(\mathbf{coefficient:\ weierstrassform},\ \mathbf{basefield:\ Field}) \\ \rightarrow \mathbf{ECGeneric} \end{array}$

Create an elliptic curve object.

All elements of coefficient must be in basefield.

basefield must be **RationalField** or **FiniteField** or their subclasses. See also

weierstrassform for coefficient.

4.3 finitefield – Finite Field

- Classes
 - †FiniteField
 - $-\ \dagger Finite Field Element$
 - $-\ Finite Prime Field$
 - FinitePrimeFieldElement
 - ExtendedField
 - $\ \mathbf{ExtendedFieldElement}$

4.3.1 †FiniteField – finite field, abstract

Abstract class for finite fields. Do not use the class directly, but use the subclasses FinitePrimeField or ExtendedField.

The class is a subclass of **Field**.

Abstract class for finite field elements. Do not use the class directly, but use the subclasses FinitePrimeFieldElement or ExtendedFieldElement.

The class is a subclass of FieldElement.

4.3.3 FinitePrimeField - finite prime field

Finite prime field is also known as \mathbb{F}_p or GF(p). It has prime number cardinality. The class is a subclass of **FiniteField**.

Initialize (Constructor)

$FinitePrimeField(characteristic: integer) \rightarrow FinitePrimeField$

Create a FinitePrimeField instance with the given characteristic. characteristic must be positive prime integer.

Attributes

zero:

It expresses the additive unit 0. (read only)

one:

It expresses the multiplicative unit 1. (read only)

operator	explanation
F==G	equality test.
x in F	membership test.
card(F)	Cardinality of the field.

4.3.3.1 createElement - create element of finite prime field

 $createElement(self, seed: integer) \rightarrow FinitePrimeFieldElement$

Create FinitePrimeFieldElement with seed. seed must be int or long.

4.3.3.2 getCharacteristic - get characteristic

```
\mathtt{getCharacteristic}(\mathtt{self}) 	o integer
```

Return the characteristic of the field.

4.3.3.3 issubring – subring test

 $issubring(self, other: Ring) \rightarrow bool$

Report whether another ring contains the field as subring.

4.3.3.4 issuperring – superring test

issuperring(self, other: Ring) $\rightarrow bool$

Report whether the field is a superring of another ring. Since the field is a prime field, it can be a superring of itself only.

${\bf 4.3.4} \quad {\bf Finite Prime Field Element-element\ of\ finite\ prime\ field}$

The class provides elements of finite prime fields.

It is a subclass of FiniteFieldElement and IntegerResidueClass.

Initialize (Constructor)

Create element in finite prime field of modulus with residue representative. modulus must be positive prime integer.

operator	explanation
a+b	addition.
a-b	subtraction.
a*b	multiplication.
a**n,pow(a,n)	power.
-a	negation.
+a	make a copy.
a==b	equality test.
a!=b	inequality test.
repr(a)	return representation string.
str(a)	return string.

 $\mathbf{4.3.4.1} \quad \mathbf{getRing} - \mathbf{get} \ \mathbf{ring} \ \mathbf{object}$

 $\operatorname{getRing}(\operatorname{self}) o \mathit{FinitePrimeField}$

Return an instance of FinitePrimeField to which the element belongs.

4.3.4.2 order – order of multiplicative group

 $\operatorname{order}(\operatorname{self}) o integer$

Find and return the order of the element in the multiplicative group of \mathbb{F}_p .

4.3.5 ExtendedField – extended field of finite field

Extended Field is a class for finite field, whose cardinality $q = p^n$ with a prime p and n > 1. It is usually called \mathbb{F}_q or GF(q).

The class is a subclass of **FiniteField**.

Initialize (Constructor)

 $\begin{tabular}{ll} Extended Field (base field: $FiniteField, $modulus: $FiniteFieldPolynomial) \end{tabular}$

 \rightarrow ExtendedField

Create a field extension basefield [X]/(modulus(X)).

FinitePrimeField instance with the given characteristic. The modulus has to be an irreducible polynomial with coefficients in the basefield.

Attributes

zero:

It expresses the additive unit 0. (read only)

one:

It expresses the multiplicative unit 1. (read only)

operator	explanation
F==G	equality or not.
x in F	membership test.
card(F)	Cardinality of the field.
repr(F)	representation string.
str(F)	string.

4.3.5.1 createElement – create element of extended field

 $createElement(self, seed: extended element seed) \rightarrow ExtendedFieldElement$

Create an element of the field from seed. The result is an instance of **ExtendedFieldElement**.

The seed can be:

- a FinitePrimeFieldPolynomial
- an integer, which will be expanded in card(basefield) and interpreted as a polynomial.
- basefield element.
- a list of basefield elements interpreted as a polynomial coefficient.

4.3.5.2 getCharacteristic - get characteristic

```
\operatorname{getCharacteristic}(\operatorname{self}) 	o integer
```

Return the characteristic of the field.

4.3.5.3 issubring – subring test

```
issubring(self, other: Ring) \rightarrow bool
```

Report whether another ring contains the field as subring.

4.3.5.4 issuperring – superring test

```
issuperring(self, other: Ring) \rightarrow bool
```

Report whether the field is a superring of another ring.

4.3.5.5 primitive element – generator of multiplicative group

```
	ext{primitive element(self)} 	o 	ext{\it ExtendedFieldElement}
```

Return a primitive element of the field, i.e., a generator of the multiplicative group.

4.3.6 ExtendedFieldElement – element of finite field

ExtendedFieldElement is a class for an element of F_q . The class is a subclass of **FiniteFieldElement**.

Initialize (Constructor)

Extended Field Element (representative: Finite Field Polynomial, field: Extended Field)

ightarrow ExtendedFieldElement

Create an element of the finite extended field.

The argument representative must be an **FiniteFieldPolynomial** has same basefield. Another argument field must be an instance of ExtendedField.

operator	explanation
a+b	addition.
a-b	subtraction.
a*b	multiplication.
a/b	inverse multiplication.
a**n,pow(a,n)	power.
-a	negation.
+a	make a copy.
a==b	equality test.
a!=b	inequality test.
repr(a)	return representation string.
str(a)	return string.

 $\bf 4.3.6.1 \quad getRing-get\ ring\ object$

 $\mathtt{getRing}(\mathtt{self}) o extit{FinitePrimeField}$

Return an instance of FinitePrimeField to which the element belongs.

4.3.6.2 inverse – inverse element

 $inverse(self) \rightarrow \textit{ExtendedFieldElement}$

Return the inverse element.

4.4 group – algorithms for finite groups

- Classes
 - Group
 - GroupElement
 - GenerateGroup
 - AbelianGenerate

4.4.1 †Group – group structure

Initialize (Constructor)

```
Group(value: class, operation: int=-1) \rightarrow Group
```

Create an object which wraps value (typically a ring or a field) only to expose its group structure.

The instance has methods defined for (abstract) group. For example, **identity** returns the identity element of the group from wrapped value.

value must be an instance of a class expresses group structure. operation must be 0 or 1; If operation is 0, value is regarded as the additive group. On the other hand, if operation is 1, value is considered as the multiplicative group. The default value of operation is 0.

†You can input an instance of **Group** itself as value. In this case, the default value of operation is the attribute **operation** of the instance.

Attributes

entity:

The wrapped object.

operation:

It expresses the mode of operation; 0 means additive, while 1 means multiplicative.

Operations

operator	explanation
A==B	Return whether A and B are equal or not.
A!=B	Check whether A and B are not equal.
repr(A)	representation
str(A)	simple representation

```
>>> G1=group.Group(finitefield.FinitePrimeField(37), 1)
>>> print G1
F_37
>>> G2=group.Group(intresidue.IntegerResidueClassRing(6), 0)
```

>>> print G2 Z/6Z

4.4.1.1 setOperation – change operation

$setOperation(self, operation: int) \rightarrow (None)$

Change group type to additive (0) or multiplicative (1).

operation must be 0 or 1.

4.4.1.2 †createElement – generate a GroupElement instance

$createElement(self, *value) \rightarrow \textit{GroupElement}$

Return **GroupElement** object whose group is self, initialized with value.

†This method calls self.entity.createElement.

value must fit the form of argument for self.entity.createElement.

4.4.1.3 †identity – identity element

$identity(self) \rightarrow GroupElement$

Return identity element (unit) of group.

Return zero (additive) or one (multiplicative) corresponding to **operation**. †This method calls **self.entity**.identity or **entity** does not have the attribute then returns one or zero.

4.4.1.4 grouporder – order of the group

$grouporder(self) \rightarrow long$

Return group order (cardinality) of self.

†This method calls self.entity.grouporder, card or len .

We assume that the group is finite, so returned value is expected as some long integer. If the group is infinite, we do not define the type of output by the method.

```
>>> G1=group.Group(finitefield.FinitePrimeField(37), 1)
>>> G1.grouporder()
36
>>> G1.setOperation(0)
>>> print G1.identity()
FinitePrimeField,0 in F_37
>>> G1.grouporder()
37
```

4.4.2 GroupElement – elements of group structure

Initialize (Constructor)

GroupElement(value: class, operation: int=-1) \rightarrow GroupElement

Create an object which wraps value (typically a ring element or a field element) to make it behave as an element of group.

The instance has methods defined for an (abstract) element of group. For example, **inverse** returns the inverse element of value as the element of group object.

value must be an instance of a class expresses an element of group structure. operation must be 0 or 1; If operation is 0, value is regarded as the additive group. On the other hand, if operation is 1, value is considered as the multiplicative group. The default value of operation is 0.

†You can input an instance of **GroupElement** itself as value. In this case, the default value of operation is the attribute **operation** of the instance.

Attributes

entity:

The wrapped object.

\mathbf{set} :

It is an instance of **Group**, which expresses the group to which self belongs.

operation:

It expresses the mode of operation; 0 means additive, while 1 means multiplicative.

operator	explanation	
A==B	Return whether A and B are equal or not.	
A!=B	Check whether A and B are not equal.	
A.ope(B)	Basic operation (additive +, multiplicative *)	
A.ope2(n)	Extended operation (additive *, multiplicative **)	
A.inverse()	Return the inverse element of self	
repr(A)	representation	
str(A)	simple representation	

```
>>> G1=group.GroupElement(finitefield.FinitePrimeFieldElement(18, 37), 1)
>>> print G1
FinitePrimeField,18 in F_37
>>> G2=group.Group(intresidue.IntegerResidueClass(3, 6), 0)
IntegerResidueClass(3, 6)
```

4.4.2.1 set Operation – change operation

$\operatorname{setOperation}(\operatorname{self},\operatorname{operation}:\operatorname{int}) \to (\operatorname{None})$

Change group type to additive (0) or multiplicative (1).

operation must be 0 or 1.

4.4.2.2 †getGroup – generate a Group instance

$$\operatorname{getGroup}(\operatorname{self}) o \mathit{Group}$$

Return **Group** object to which self belongs.

†This method calls self.entity.getRing or getGroup. †In an initialization of **GroupElement**, the attribute set is set as the value returned from the method.

4.4.2.3 order – order by factorization method

$$\operatorname{order}(\operatorname{self}) \to \operatorname{long}$$

Return the order of self.

†This method uses the factorization of order of group.

 \dagger We assume that the group is finite, so returned value is expected as some long integer. \dagger If the group is infinite, the method would raise an error or return an invalid value.

4.4.2.4 t order – order by baby-step giant-step

$$ext{t order(self, v: } int=2) o ext{long}$$

Return the order of self.

†This method uses Terr's baby-step giant-step algorithm.

This method does not use the order of group. You can put number of baby-step to v. †We assume that the group is finite, so returned value is expected as some

long integer. \dagger If the group is infinite, the method would raise an error or return an invalid value.

v must be some int integer.

```
>>> G1=group.GroupElement(finitefield.FinitePrimeFieldElement(18, 37), 1)
>>> G1.order()
36
>>> G1.t_order()
36
```

$4.4.3 \quad \dagger Generate Group - group \ structure \ with \ generator$

Initialize (Constructor)

 $\textbf{GenerateGroup(value: } \textit{class}, \texttt{operation: } \textit{int} \text{=-1}) \rightarrow \textbf{GroupElement}$

Create an object which is generated by value as the element of group structure.

This initializes a group 'including' the group elements, not a group with generators, now. We do not recommend using this module now. The instance has methods defined for an (abstract) element of group. For example, **inverse** returns the inverse element of value as the element of group object. The class inherits the class **Group**.

value must be a list of generators. Each generator should be an instance of a class expresses an element of group structure. operation must be 0 or 1; If operation is 0, value is regarded as the additive group. On the other hand, if operation is 1, value is considered as the multiplicative group. The default value of operation is 0.

```
>>> G1=group.GenerateGroup([intresidue.IntegerResidueClass(2, 20),
... intresidue.IntegerResidueClass(6, 20)])
>>> G1.identity()
intresidue.IntegerResidueClass(0, 20)
```

4.4.4 Abelian Generate – abelian group structure with generator

Initialize (Constructor)

The class inherits the class **GenerateGroup**.

4.4.4.1 relationLattice – relation between generators

$relationLattice(self) \rightarrow Matrix$

Return a list of relation lattice basis as a square matrix each of whose column vector is a relation basis.

The relation basis, V satisfies that \prod_i generator_i $V_i = 1$.

4.4.4.2 computeStructure – abelian group structure

$computeStructure(self) \rightarrow tuple$

Compute finite abelian group structure.

If self $G \simeq \bigoplus_i < h_i >$, return $[(h_1, \operatorname{ord}(h_1)), ...(h_n, \operatorname{ord}(h_n))]$ and ${}^{\#}G$, where $< h_i >$ is a cyclic group with the generator h_i .

The output is a tuple which has two elements; the first element is a list which elements are a list of h_i and its order, on the other hand, the second element is the order of the group.

```
>>> G=AbelianGenerate([intresidue.IntegerResidueClass(2, 20),
... intresidue.IntegerResidueClass(6, 20)])
>>> G.relationLattice()
10 7
    0 1
>>> G.computeStructure()
([IntegerResidueClassRing,IntegerResidueClass(2, 20), 10)], 10L)
```

4.5 imaginary – complex numbers and its functions

The module imaginary provides complex numbers. The functions provided are mainly corresponding to the cmath standard module.

• Classes

- ComplexField
- Complex
- †ExponentialPowerSeries
- $\ \dagger Ab solute Error$
- †RelativeError

• Functions

- $-\exp$
- expi
- log
- $-\sin$
- cos
- tan
- sinh
- cosh
- tanh
- atanh
- sqrt

This module also provides following constants:

```
\mathbf{e} :
```

This constant is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

pi:

This constant is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

j :

j is the imaginary unit.

${\bf the Complex Field}$:

theComplexField is the instance of **ComplexField**.

4.5.1 ComplexField – field of complex numbers

The class is for the field of complex numbers. The class has the single instance **theComplexField**.

This class is a subclass of **Field**.

Initialize (Constructor)

$ComplexField() \rightarrow ComplexField$

Create an instance of ComplexField. You may not want to create an instance, since there is already **theComplexField**.

Attributes

zero:

It expresses The additive unit 0. (read only)

one:

It expresses The multiplicative unit 1. (read only)

operator	explanation	
in	membership test; return whether an element is in or not.	
repr	return representation string.	
str	return string.	

4.5.1.1 createElement – create Imaginary object

```
createElement(self, seed: integer) \rightarrow Integer
```

Return a Complex object with seed.

seed must be complex or numbers having embedding to complex.

4.5.1.2 getCharacteristic – get characteristic

```
getCharacteristic(self) \rightarrow integer
```

Return the characteristic, zero.

4.5.1.3 issubring – subring test

```
issubring(self, aRing: Ring) \rightarrow bool
```

Report whether another ring contains the complex field as subring.

4.5.1.4 issuperring – superring test

```
issuperring(self, aRing: Ring) \rightarrow bool
```

Report whether the complex field contains another ring as subring.

4.5.2 Complex – a complex number

Complex is a class of complex number. Each instance has a coupled numbers; real and imaginary part of the number.

This class is a subclass of **FieldElement**.

All implemented operators in this class are delegated to complex type.

Initialize (Constructor)

$Complex(re: number im: number=0) \rightarrow Imaginary$

Create a complex number.

re can be either real or complex number. If re is real and im is not given, then its imaginary part is zero.

Attributes

real:

It expresses the real part of complex number.

imag:

It expresses the imaginary part of complex number.

4.5.2.1 getRing – get ring object

$getRing(self) \rightarrow ComplexField$

Return the complex field instance.

4.5.2.2 arg – argument of complex

Return the angle between the x-axis and the number in the Gaussian plane. radian must be Float.

4.5.2.3 conjugate – complex conjugate

$ext{conjugate(self)} o ext{\it Complex}$

Return the complex conjugate of the number.

4.5.2.4 copy – copied number

$\operatorname{copy}(\operatorname{self}) o \operatorname{\it Complex}$

Return the copy of the number itself.

4.5.2.5 inverse – complex inverse

$inverse(self) \rightarrow Complex$

Return the inverse of the number.

If the number is zero, ZeroDivisionError is raised.

4.5.3 ExponentialPowerSeries – exponential power series

This class is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.5.4 AbsoluteError – absolute error

This class is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.5.5 RelativeError – relative error

This class is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.5.6 exp(function) – exponential value

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.5.7 expi(function) – imaginary exponential value

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

$4.5.8 \log(function) - \log arithm$

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

$4.5.9 \sin(\text{function}) - \sin \text{e function}$

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

$4.5.10 \cos(\text{function}) - \cos{\text{ine function}}$

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.5.11 tan(function) – tangent function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.5.12 sinh(function) – hyperbolic sine function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.5.13 cosh(function) – hyperbolic cosine function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.5.14 tanh(function) - hyperbolic tangent function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.5.15 atanh(function) – hyperbolic arc tangent function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.5.16 sqrt(function) – square root

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

${\bf 4.6}\quad intresidue-integer\ residue\\$

intresidue module provides integer residue classes or $\mathbf{Z}/m\mathbf{Z}$.

- Classes
 - $\ Integer Residue Class$
 - $\ Integer Residue Class Ring$

${\bf 4.6.1}\quad Integer Residue Class-integer\ residue\ class$

This class is a subclass of **CommutativeRingElement**.

Initialize (Constructor)

 $\begin{array}{l} \textbf{IntegerResidueClass(representative:} \ integer, \ \texttt{modulus:} \ integer) \\ \rightarrow \ \textit{Integer} \end{array}$

Create a residue class of modulus with residue representative. modulus must be positive integer.

operator	explanation
a+b	addition.
a-b	subtraction.
a*b	multiplication.
a/b	division.
a**i,pow(a,i)	power.
-a	negation.
+a	make a copy.
a==b	equality or not.
a!=b	inequality or not.
repr(a)	return representation string.
str(a)	return string.

4.6.1.1 getRing – get ring object

 $\operatorname{getRing}(\operatorname{self}) o \mathit{IntegerResidueClassRing}$

Return a ring to which it belongs.

4.6.1.2 getResidue – get residue

 $\operatorname{getResidue}(\operatorname{self}) o integer$

Return the value of residue.

4.6.1.3 getModulus – get modulus

 $\operatorname{getModulus}(\operatorname{self}) o integer$

Return the value of modulus.

4.6.1.4 inverse – inverse element

inverse(self)
ightarrow IntegerResidueClass

Return the inverse element if it is invertible. Otherwise raise ValueError.

4.6.1.5 minimumAbsolute - minimum absolute representative

 $minimumAbsolute(self) \rightarrow Integer$

Return the minimum absolute representative integer of the residue class.

 ${\bf 4.6.1.6} \quad {\bf minimum Non Negative - smallest \ non-negative \ representative} \\$

 $minimumNonNegative(self) \rightarrow Integer$

Return the smallest non-negative representative element of the residue class. †this method has an alias, named toInteger.

4.6.2 IntegerResidueClassRing – ring of integer residue

The class is for rings of integer residue classes.

This class is a subclass of **CommutativeRing**.

Initialize (Constructor)

$\textbf{IntegerResidueClassRing}(\texttt{modulus:}\ integer) \rightarrow IntegerResidueClassRing$

Create an instance of Integer ResidueClassRing. The argument modulus = m specifies an ideal $m\mathbb{Z}$.

Attributes

zero:

It expresses The additive unit 0. (read only)

one:

It expresses The multiplicative unit 1. (read only)

operator	explanation	
R==A	ring equality.	
card(R)	return cardinality. See also compatibility module.	
e in R	return whether an element is in or not.	
repr(R)	return representation string.	
str(R)	return string.	

${\bf 4.6.2.1} \quad {\bf createElement-create\ IntegerResidueClass\ object}$

```
createElement(self, seed: integer) \rightarrow Integer
```

Return an IntegerResidueClass instance with seed.

4.6.2.2 is field – field test

isfield(self) o bool

Return True if the modulus is prime, False if not. Since a finite domain is a field, other ring property tests are merely aliases of isfield; they are isdomain, iseuclidean, isnoetherian, ispid, isufd.

${\bf 4.6.2.3} \quad {\bf getInstance-get\ instance\ of\ IntegerResidueClassRing}$

 $\operatorname{getInstance}(\operatorname{cls}, \operatorname{modulus}: \operatorname{integer}) o \operatorname{IntegerResidueClass}$

Return an instance of the class of specified modulus. Since this is a class method, use it as:

IntegerResidueClassRing.getInstance(3) to create a $\mathbb{Z}/3\mathbb{Z}$ object, for example.

4.7 lattice – Lattice

- Classes
 - Lattice
 - LatticeElement
- Functions
 - LLL

4.7.1 Lattice – lattice

Initialize (Constructor)

 ${\bf Lattice(\ basis:\ RingSquareMatrix,\ quadraticForm:\ RingSquareMatrix)}$

ightarrow Lattice

Create Lattice object.

Attributes

basis: The basis of self lattice.

quadraticForm: The quadratic form corresponding the inner product.

4.7.1.1 createElement - create element

```
createElement(self, compo: list) \rightarrow LatticeElement
```

Create the element which has coefficients with given compo.

4.7.1.2 bilinearForm – bilinear form

$$bilinearForm(self, \ v_1: \textcolor{red}{\textbf{Vector}}, \ v_2: \textcolor{red}{\textbf{Vector}}) \rightarrow \textit{integer}$$

Return the inner product of v_1 and v_2 with **quadraticForm**.

4.7.1.3 isCyclic - Check whether cyclic lattice or not

Check whether self lattice is a cyclic lattice or not.

4.7.1.4 isIdeal - Check whether ideal lattice or not

isIdeal(self) o bool

Check whether self lattice is an ideal lattice or not.

4.7.2 LatticeElement – element of lattice

Initialize (Constructor)

 $\textbf{LatticeElement(lattice: Lattice, compo: \textit{list},) \rightarrow \textit{LatticeElement}}$

Create LatticeElement object.

Elements of lattices are represented as linear combinations of basis. The class inherits **Matrix**. Then, intances are regarded as $n \times 1$ matrix whose coefficients consist of compo, where n is the dimension of lattice.

lattice is an instance of Lattice object. compo is coefficients list of basis.

Attributes

lattice: the lattice which includes self

${\bf 4.7.2.1} \quad {\bf getLattice-Find\ lattice\ belongs\ to}$

 $\mathbf{getLattice}(\mathbf{self}) \to \mathbf{Lattice}$

Obtain the Lattice object corresponding to self.

4.7.3 LLL(function) – LLL reduction

$LLL(\texttt{M:} \ \mathbf{RingSquareMatrix}) \rightarrow \textit{L:} \ \mathbf{RingSquareMatrix}, \ \ \textit{T:} \ \mathbf{RingSquareMatrix}$

Return LLL-reduced basis for the given basis M.

The output L is the LLL-reduced basis. T is the transportation matrix from the original basis to the LLL-reduced basis.

```
>>> M=mat.Matrix(3,3,[1,0,12,0,1,26,0,0,13]);
>>> lat.LLL(M);
([1, 0, 0]+[0, 1, 0]+[0, 0, 13], [1L, 0L, -12L]+[0L, 1L, -26L]+[0L, 0L, 1L])
```

4.8 matrix – matrices

- Classes
 - Matrix
 - SquareMatrix
 - RingMatrix
 - RingSquareMatrix
 - FieldMatrix
 - FieldSquareMatrix
 - MatrixRing
 - Subspace
- Functions
 - createMatrix
 - identityMatrix
 - unitMatrix
 - zeroMatrix

The module matrix has also some exception classes.

MatrixSizeError: Report contradicting given input to the matrix size.

VectorsNotIndependent: Report column vectors are not independent.

NoInverseImage: Report any inverse image does not exist.

NoInverse: Report the matrix is not invertible.

This module using following type:

compo: compo must be one of these forms below.

- concatenated row lists, such as [1,2]+[3,4]+[5,6].
- list of row lists, such as [[1,2], [3,4], [5,6]].
- list of column tuples, such as [(1, 3, 5), (2, 4, 6)].
- list of vectors whose dimension equals column, such as vector. Vector([1, 3, 5]), vector. Vector([2, 4, 6]).

The examples above represent the same matrix form as follows:

- 1 2
- 3 4
- 5 6

4.8.1 Matrix – matrices

Initialize (Constructor)

```
\begin{array}{c} \textbf{Matrix(row: } integer, \text{ column: } integer, \text{ compo: } compo=0, \text{ coeff\_ring: } \\ CommutativeRing=0) \\ &\rightarrow Matrix \end{array}
```

Create new matrices object.

†This constructor automatically changes the class to one of the following class: RingMatrix, RingSquareMatrix, FieldMatrix, FieldSquareMatrix.

Your input determines the class automatically by examining the matrix size and the coefficient ring. row and column must be integer, and coeff_ring must be an instance of **Ring**. Refer to **compo** for information about compo. If you abbreviate compo, it will be deemed to all zero list.

The list of expected inputs and outputs is as following:

- Matrix(row, column, compo, coeff_ring)
 → the row×column matrix whose elements are compo and coefficient ring is coeff_ring
- Matrix(row, column, compo)
 → the row×column matrix whose elements are compo (The coefficient ring is automatically determined.)
- Matrix(row, column, coeff_ring)
 → the row×column matrix whose coefficient ring is coeff_ring (All elements are 0 in coeff_ring.)
- Matrix(row, column)
 → the row×column matrix (The coefficient matrix is Integer. All elements are 0.)

Attributes

row: The row size of the matrix.

column: The column size of the matrix.

coeff ring: The coefficient ring of the matrix.

compo: The elements of the matrix.

Operations

operator	explanation		
M==N	Return whether M and N are equal or not.		
M[i, j]	Return the coefficient of i-th row, j-th column term of matrix M.		
M[i]	Return the vector of i-th column term of matrix M.		
M[i, j]=c	Replace the coefficient of i-th row, j-th column term of matrix M by c.		
M[j]=c	Replace the vector of i-th column term of matrix M by vector c.		
c in M	Check whether some element of M equals c.		
repr(M)	Return the repr string of the matrix M.		
	string represents list concatenated row vector lists.		
str(M)	Return the str string of the matrix M.		

```
>>> A = matrix.Matrix(2, 3, [1,0,0]+[0,0,0])
>>> A.__class__.__name__
'RingMatrix'
>>> B = matrix.Matrix(2, 3, [1,0,0,0,0,0])
>>> A == B
True
>>> B[1, 1] = 0
>>> A != B
True
>>> B == 0
True
>>> A[1, 1]
>>> print repr(A)
[1, 0, 0]+[0, 0, 0]
>>> print str(A)
1 0 0
0 0 0
```

4.8.1.1 map – apply function to elements

```
\mathbf{map}(\mathbf{self},\,\mathbf{function}:\,\mathit{function})\to\mathit{Matrix}
```

Return the matrix whose elements is applied function to.

†The function map is an analogy of built-in function map.

4.8.1.2 reduce - reduce elements iteratively

```
 \begin{array}{l} {\tt reduce(self, \, function: \, function, \, initializer: \, \textit{RingElement} = None)} \\ {\to \, RingElement} \end{array}
```

Apply function from upper-left to lower-right, so as to reduce the iterable to a single value.

†The function map is an analogy of built-in function reduce.

4.8.1.3 copy – create a copy

$\mathtt{copy}(\mathtt{self}) o extit{Matrix}$

create a copy of self.

†The matrix generated by the function is same matrix to self, but not same as a instance.

4.8.1.4 set - set compo

```
\operatorname{set}(\operatorname{self},\operatorname{compo}:\operatorname{\it compo}) 	o (\operatorname{\it None})
```

Substitute the list compo for compo.

compo must be the form of compo.

4.8.1.5 setRow - set m-th row vector

$\mathtt{setRow}(\mathtt{self}, \mathtt{m}: integer, \mathtt{arg:}\ list/Vector) o (None)$

Substitute the list/Vector arg as m-th row.

The length of arg must be same to self.column.

4.8.1.6 setColumn - set n-th column vector

```
\operatorname{setColumn}(\operatorname{self}, \operatorname{n:} integer, \operatorname{arg:} list/Vector) \rightarrow (None)
```

Substitute the list/Vector arg as n-th column.

The length of arg must be same to self.row.

4.8.1.7 getRow - get i-th row vector

$getRow(self, i: integer) \rightarrow Vector$

Return i-th row in form of self.

The function returns a row vector (an instance of **Vector**).

4.8.1.8 getColumn – get j-th column vector

```
\operatorname{getColumn}(\operatorname{self},\ \operatorname{j:}\ integer) 	o \ Vector
```

Return j-th column in form of self.

4.8.1.9 swapRow – swap two row vectors

```
swapRow(self, m1: integer, m2: integer) \rightarrow (None)
```

Swap self's m1-th row vector and m2-th row one.

4.8.1.10 swapColumn – swap two column vectors

```
swapColumn(self, n1: integer, n2: integer) \rightarrow (None)
```

Swap self's n1-th column vector and n2-th column one.

4.8.1.11 insertRow – insert row vectors

Insert row vectors arg to i-th row.

arg must be list, **Vector** or **Matrix**. The length (or **column**) of it should be same to the column of self.

4.8.1.12 insertColumn – insert column vectors

Insert column vectors arg to j-th column.

arg must be list, **Vector** or **Matrix**. The length (or **row**) of it should be same to the row of self.

4.8.1.13 extendRow – extend row vectors

```
\operatorname{extendRow}(\operatorname{self},\operatorname{arg:}\ \mathit{list/Vector/Matrix}) 	o (\mathit{None})
```

Join self with row vectors arg (in vertical way).

The function combines self with the last row vector of self. That is, extendRow(arg) is same to insertRow(self.row+1, arg).

arg must be list, **Vector** or **Matrix**. The length (or **column**) of it should be same to the column of self.

4.8.1.14 extendColumn – extend column vectors

```
{\tt extendColumn(self, arg: \it list/Vector/Matrix)} \rightarrow ({\tt None})
```

Join self with column vectors ${\tt arg}$ (in horizontal way).

The function combines self with the last column vector of self. That is,

extendColumn(arg) is same to insertColumn(self.column+1, arg).

arg must be list, **Vector** or **Matrix**. The length (or **row**) of it should be same to the row of self.

4.8.1.15 deleteRow – delete row vector

```
	ext{deleteRow(self, i: } integer) 
ightarrow (None)
```

Delete i-th row vector.

4.8.1.16 deleteColumn – delete column vector

```
	ext{deleteColumn(self, j: } integer) 
ightarrow (None)
```

Delete j-th column vector.

4.8.1.17 transpose – transpose matrix

```
transpose(self) \rightarrow \textit{Matrix}
```

Return the transpose of self.

$4.8.1.18 \quad getBlock-block\ matrix$

```
\begin{array}{lll} \texttt{getBlock(self, i:} & \textit{integer, j:} & \textit{integer, row:} & \textit{integer, column:} & \textit{integer, old integer}, \\ \textit{ger=None)} \\ & \rightarrow \textit{Matrix} \end{array}
```

Return the row×column block matrix from the (i, j)-element.

If column is omitted, column is considered as same value to row.

4.8.1.19 subMatrix – submatrix

```
	ext{subMatrix(self, I: } integer, J: integer 	ext{None}) 
ightarrow Matrix \ 	ext{subMatrix(self, I: } list, J: list= 	ext{None}) 
ightarrow Matrix \ 	ext{}
```

The function has a twofold significance.

- I and J are integer: Return submatrix deleted I-th row and J-th column.
- I and J are list:

 Return the submatrix composed of elements from self assigned by rows I and columns J, respectively.

If J is omitted, J is considered as same value to I.

```
>>> A = matrix.Matrix(2, 3, [1,2,3]+[4,5,6])
>>> A
[1, 2, 3]+[4, 5, 6]
>>> A.map(complex)
[(1+0j), (2+0j), (3+0j)]+[(4+0j), (5+0j), (6+0j)]
>>> A.reduce(max)
>>> A.swapRow(1, 2)
>>> A
[4, 5, 6]+[1, 2, 3]
>>> A.extendColumn([-2, -1])
>>> A
[4, 5, 6, -2]+[1, 2, 3, -1]
>>> B = matrix.Matrix(3, 3, [1,2,3]+[4,5,6]+[7,8,9])
>>> B.subMatrix(2, 3)
[1, 2]+[7, 8]
>>> B.subMatrix([2, 3], [1, 2])
[4, 5]+[7, 8]
```

4.8.2 SquareMatrix - square matrices

Initialize (Constructor)

Create new square matrices object.

SquareMatrix is subclass of Matrix. †This constructor automatically changes the class to one of the following class: RingMatrix, RingSquareMatrix, FieldMatrix, FieldSquareMatrix.

Your input determines the class automatically by examining the matrix size and the coefficient ring. row and column must be integer, and coeff_ring must be an instance of **Ring**. Refer to **compo** for information about compo. If you abbreviate compo, it will be deemed to all zero list.

The list of expected inputs and outputs is as following:

- Matrix(row, compo, coeff_ring)
 → the row square matrix whose elements are compo and coefficient ring is coeff_ring
- Matrix(row, compo)
 → the row square matrix whose elements are compo (coefficient ring is automatically determined)
- Matrix(row, coeff_ring)
 → the row square matrix whose coefficient ring is coeff_ring (All elements are 0 in coeff_ring.)
- Matrix(row)
 → the row square matrix (The coefficient ring is Integer. All elements are 0.)

†We can initialize as Matrix, but column must be same to row in the case.

4.8.2.1 is Upper Triangular Matrix - check upper triangular

$$is Upper Triangular Matrix (self)
ightarrow \mathit{True}/\mathit{False}$$

Check whether self is upper triangular matrix or not.

4.8.2.2 isLowerTriangularMatrix - check lower triangular

$isLowerTriangularMatrix(self) ightarrow \mathit{True/False}$

Check whether self is lower triangular matrix or not.

4.8.2.3 isDiagonalMatrix - check diagonal matrix

$$is Diagonal Matrix(self)
ightarrow \mathit{True/False}$$

Check whether self is diagonal matrix or not.

4.8.2.4 isScalarMatrix - check scalar matrix

$$isScalarMatrix(self)
ightarrow \mathit{True/False}$$

Check whether self is scalar matrix or not.

4.8.2.5 isSymmetricMatrix - check symmetric matrix

$isSymmetricMatrix(self) ightarrow \mathit{True/False}$

Check whether self is symmetric matrix or not.

- >>> A = matrix.SquareMatrix(3, [1,2,3]+[0,5,6]+[0,0,9])
- >>> A.isUpperTriangularMatrix()

```
True
>>> B = matrix.SquareMatrix(3, [1,0,0]+[0,-2,0]+[0,0,7])
>>> B.isDiagonalMatrix()
True
```

4.8.3 RingMatrix - matrix whose elements belong ring

```
\begin{array}{lll} \textbf{RingMatrix(row:} & integer, & \texttt{column:} & integer, & \texttt{compo:} & compo=0, \\ \textbf{coeff\_ring:} & CommutativeRing=0) \\ & & \rightarrow & RingMatrix \end{array}
```

Create matrix whose coefficient ring belongs ring.

RingMatrix is subclass of **Matrix**. See Matrix for getting information about the initialization.

Operations

operator	explanation
M+N	Return the sum of matrices M and N.
M-N	Return the difference of matrices M and N.
M*N	Return the product of M and N. N must be matrix, vector or scalar
M % d	Return M modulo d. d must be nonzero integer.
- M	Return the matrix whose coefficients have inverted signs of M.
+M	Return the copy of M.

```
>>> A = matrix.Matrix(2, 3, [1,2,3]+[4,5,6])
>>> B = matrix.Matrix(2, 3, [7,8,9]+[0,-1,-2])
>>> A + B
[8, 10, 12]+[4, 4, 4]
>>> A - B
[-6, -6, -6]+[4, 6, 8]
>>> A * B.transpose()
[50, -8]+[122, -17]
>>> -B * vector.Vector([1, -1, 0])
Vector([1, -1])
>>> 2 * A
[2, 4, 6]+[8, 10, 12]
>>> B % 3
[1, 2, 0]+[0, 2, 1]
```

4.8.3.1 getCoefficientRing - get coefficient ring

```
\operatorname{getCoefficientRing}(\operatorname{self}) 	o \operatorname{\textit{CommutativeRing}}
```

Return the coefficient ring of self.

This method checks all elements of self and set coeff_ring to the valid coefficient ring.

4.8.3.2 toFieldMatrix – set field as coefficient ring

```
	ext{toFieldMatrix(self)} 
ightarrow (None)
```

Change the class of the matrix to **FieldMatrix** or **FieldSquareMatrix**, where the coefficient ring will be the quotient field of the current domain.

4.8.3.3 toSubspace – regard as vector space

```
toSubspace(self, isbasis: True/False=None) \rightarrow (None)
```

Change the class of the matrix to Subspace, where the coefficient ring will be the quotient field of the current domain.

4.8.3.4 hermiteNormalForm (HNF) - Hermite Normal Form

 $ooknote{hermiteNormalForm(self)}
ightarrow extit{RingMatrix} \ ooknote{HNF(self)}
ightarrow extit{RingMatrix}$

Return upper triangular Hermite normal form (HNF).

$\begin{array}{ll} \textbf{4.8.3.5} & \textbf{exthermiteNormalForm (extHNF)} - \textbf{extended Hermite Normal Form algorithm} \\ \end{array}$

```
	ext{exthermiteNormalForm(self)} 
ightarrow (	ext{\it RingSquareMatrix}, 	ext{\it RingMatrix}) \ = 	ext{extHNF(self)} 
ightarrow (	ext{\it RingSquareMatrix}, 	ext{\it RingMatrix})
```

Return Hermite normal form M and U satisfied selfU = M.

The function returns tuple (U, M), where U is an instance of **RingSquareMatrix** and M is an instance of **RingMatrix**.

4.8.3.6 kernelAsModule – kernel as \mathbb{Z} -module

$kernelAsModule(self) \rightarrow \textit{RingMatrix}$

Return kernel as \mathbb{Z} -module.

The difference between the function and **kernel** is that each elements of the returned value are integer.

```
>>> A = matrix.Matrix(3, 4, [1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,-1,-2,-3])
>>> print A.hermiteNormalForm()
0 36 29 28
0 0 1 0
0 0 0 1
>>> U, M = A.hermiteNormalForm()
>>> A * U == M
True
>>> B = matrix.Matrix(1, 2, [2, 1])
>>> print B.kernelAsModule()
1
-2
```

4.8.4 RingSquareMatrix – square matrix whose elements belong ring

```
\begin{array}{lll} RingSquareMatrix(row: integer, & column: & integer=0, & compo: \\ compo=0, & coeff\_ring: & CommutativeRing=0) \\ & \rightarrow & RingMatrix \end{array}
```

Create square matrix whose coefficient ring belongs ring.

RingSquareMatrix is subclass of **RingMatrix** and **SquareMatrix**. See SquareMatrix for getting information about the initialization.

Operations

operator	explanation
M**c	Return the c-th power of matrices M.

```
>>> A = matrix.RingSquareMatrix(3, [1,2,3]+[4,5,6]+[7,8,9])
>>> A ** 2
[30L, 36L, 42L]+[66L, 81L, 96L]+[102L, 126L, 150L]
```

4.8.4.1 getRing – get matrix ring

```
\operatorname{getRing}(\operatorname{self}) 	o \operatorname{\textit{MatrixRing}}
```

Return the MatrixRing belonged to by self.

4.8.4.2 isOrthogonalMatrix - check orthogonal matrix

$isOrthogonalMatrix(self) ightarrow \mathit{True/False}$

Check whether self is orthogonal matrix or not.

4.8.4.3 isAlternatingMatrix (isAntiSymmetricMatrix, isSkewSymmetricMatrix) – check alternating matrix

$isAlternatingMatrix(self) \rightarrow \mathit{True/False}$

Check whether self is alternating matrix or not.

4.8.4.4 isSingular – check singular matrix

$is Singular(self) ightarrow \mathit{True/False}$

Check whether self is singular matrix or not.

The function determines whether determinant of self is 0. Note that the the non-singular matrix does not automatically mean invertible matrix; the nature that the matrix is invertible depends on its coefficient ring.

4.8.4.5 trace – trace

$\mathrm{trace}(\mathrm{self}) \rightarrow \mathit{RingElement}$

Return the trace of self.

4.8.4.6 determinant – determinant

$\operatorname{determinant}(\operatorname{self}) o \mathit{RingElement}$

Return the determinant of self.

4.8.4.7 cofactor – cofactor

$$\mathbf{cofactor}(\mathbf{self}, \ \mathtt{i:} \ \mathit{integer}, \ \mathtt{j:} \ \mathit{integer}) \rightarrow \mathit{RingElement}$$

Return the (i, j)-cofactor.

4.8.4.8 commutator – commutator

$\mathbf{commutator}(\mathbf{self}, \, \mathtt{N:} \, \, \textit{RingSquareMatrix} \, \, \textit{element}) \rightarrow \textit{RingSquareMatrix} \,$

Return the commutator for self and N.

The commutator for M and N, which is denoted as [M, N], is defined as [M, N] = MN - NM.

4.8.4.9 characteristicMatrix - characteristic matrix

$characteristicMatrix(self) \rightarrow \textit{RingSquareMatrix}$

Return the characteristic matrix of self.

4.8.4.10 adjugateMatrix – adjugate matrix

$ext{adjugateMatrix}(ext{self}) ightarrow ext{\it RingSquareMatrix}$

Return the adjugate matrix of self.

The adjugate matrix for M is the matrix N such that $MN = NM = (\det M)E$, where E is the identity matrix.

4.8.4.11 cofactorMatrix (cofactors) - cofactor matrix

```
	ext{cofactorMatrix(self)} 
ightarrow 	ext{\it RingSquareMatrix} \ 	ext{cofactors(self)} 
ightarrow 	ext{\it RingSquareMatrix}
```

Return the cofactor matrix of self.

The cofactor matrix for M is the matrix whose (i, j) element is (i, j)-cofactor of M. The cofactor matrix is same to transpose of the adjugate matrix.

4.8.4.12 smithNormalForm (SNF, elementary_divisor) – Smith Normal Form (SNF)

```
egin{align*} \mathbf{smithNormalForm}(\mathbf{self}) & 	o oldsymbol{RingSquareMatrix} \\ \mathbf{SNF}(\mathbf{self}) & 	o oldsymbol{RingSquareMatrix} \\ \mathbf{elementary\_divisor}(\mathbf{self}) & 	o oldsymbol{RingSquareMatrix} \end{aligned}
```

Return the list of diagonal elements of the Smith Normal Form (SNF) for self.

The function assumes that self is non-singular.

4.8.4.13 extsmithNormalForm (extSNF) – Smith Normal Form (SNF)

```
	ext{extsmithNormalForm(self)} 
ightarrow (RingSquareMatrix, RingSquareMatrix, RingSquareMatrix) \ extSNF(self) 
ightarrow RingSquareMatrix, RingSquareMatrix)
```

Return the Smith normal form M for self and U,V satisfied UselfV = M.

```
>>> A = matrix.RingSquareMatrix(3, [3,-5,8]+[-9,2,7]+[6,1,-4])
>>> A.trace()
1L
>>> A.determinant()
-243L
>>> B = matrix.RingSquareMatrix(3, [87,38,80]+[13,6,12]+[65,28,60])
>>> U, V, M = B.extsmithNormalForm()
>>> U * B * V == M
True
```

```
>>> print M

4 0 0

0 2 0

0 0 1

>>> B.smithNormalForm()

[4L, 2L, 1L]
```

4.8.5 FieldMatrix - matrix whose elements belong field

```
 \begin{array}{lll} \textbf{FieldMatrix(row:} & integer, & \textbf{column:} & integer, & \textbf{compo:} & compo=0, \\ \textbf{coeff\_ring:} & CommutativeRing=0) \\ & & \rightarrow \textit{RingMatrix} \end{array}
```

Create matrix whose coefficient ring belongs field.

FieldMatrix is subclass of **RingMatrix**. See **Matrix** for getting information about the initialization.

Operations

operator	explanation
M/d	Return the division of M by d.d must be scalar.
M//d	Return the division of M by d.d must be scalar.

```
>>> A = matrix.FieldMatrix(3, 3, [1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9])
>>> A / 210
1/210 1/105 1/70
2/105 1/42 1/35
1/30 4/105 3/70
```

4.8.5.1 kernel – kernel

$kernel(self) \rightarrow FieldMatrix$

Return the kernel of self.

The output is the matrix whose column vectors form basis of the kernel. The function returns None if the kernel do not exist.

4.8.5.2 image – image

$image(self) \rightarrow FieldMatrix$

Return the image of self.

The output is the matrix whose column vectors form basis of the image. The function returns None if the kernel do not exist.

4.8.5.3 rank – rank

$\mathrm{rank}(\mathrm{self}) o integer$

Return the rank of self.

4.8.5.4 inverseImage – inverse image: base solution of linear system

$inverseImage(self, V: Vector/RingMatrix) \rightarrow RingMatrix$

Return an inverse image of V by self.

The function returns one solution of the linear equation self X = V.

4.8.5.5 solve – solve linear system

$solve(self, B: Vector/RingMatrix) \rightarrow (RingMatrix, RingMatrix)$

Solve self X = B.

The function returns a particular solution sol and the kernel of self as a

matrix. If you only have to obtain the particular solution, use inverseImage.

4.8.5.6 columnEchelonForm – column echelon form

$columnEchelonForm(self) \rightarrow \textit{RingMatrix}$

Return the column reduced echelon form.

```
>>> A = matrix.FieldMatrix(2, 3, [1,2,3]+[4,5,6])
>>> print A.kernel
1/1
-2/1
   1
>>> print A.image()
1 2
4 5
>>> C = matrix.FieldMatrix(4, 3, [1,2,3]+[4,5,6]+[7,8,9]+[-1,-2,-3])
>>> D = matrix.FieldMatrix(4, 2, [1,0]+[7,6]+[13,12]+[-1,0])
>>> print C.inverseImage(D)
 3/1 4/1
-1/1 -2/1
0/1 0/1
>>> sol, ker = C.solve(D)
>>> C * (sol + ker[0]) == D
True
>>> AA = matrix.FieldMatrix(3, 3, [1,2,3]+[4,5,6]+[7,8,9])
>>> print AA.columnEchelonForm()
0/1 2/1 -1/1
0/1 1/1 0/1
0/1 0/1 1/1
```

4.8.6 FieldSquareMatrix – square matrix whose elements belong field

Create square matrix whose coefficient ring belongs field.

FieldSquareMatrix is subclass of **FieldMatrix** and **SquareMatrix**. †The function **RingSquareMatrix**determinant is overridden and use different algorithm from one used in **RingSquareMatrix**determinant;the function calls **FieldSquareMatrix**triangulate. See **SquareMatrix** for getting information about the initialization.

4.8.6.1 triangulate - triangulate by elementary row operation

$triangulate(self) \rightarrow FieldSquareMatrix$

Return an upper triangulated matrix obtained by elementary row operations.

4.8.6.2 inverse - inverse matrix

$inverse(self \ V: \ \textit{Vector/RingMatrix} = None) \rightarrow \textit{FieldSquareMatrix}$

Return the inverse of self. If V is given, then return $self^{(-1)}V$.

†If the matrix is not invertible, then raise **NoInverse**.

4.8.6.3 hessenbergForm - Hessenberg form

$ext{hessenbergForm(self)} ightarrow ext{\it FieldSquareMatrix}$

Return the Hessenberg form of self.

4.8.6.4 LUDecomposition - LU decomposition

$ext{LUDecomposition(self)} ightarrow (ext{FieldSquareMatrix}, ext{FieldSquareMatrix})$

Return the lower triangular matrix L and the upper triangular matrix U such that self == LU.

$4.8.7 \quad \dagger Matrix Ring - ring \ of \ matrices$

 $\begin{aligned} \text{MatrixRing(size: } integer, \text{ scalars: } CommutativeRing) \\ &\rightarrow \textit{MatrixRing} \end{aligned}$

Create a ring of matrices with given size and coefficient ring scalars.

MatrixRing is subclass of **Ring**.

4.8.7.1 unitMatrix - unit matrix

```
	ext{unitMatrix(self)} 
ightarrow 	ext{\it RingSquareMatrix}
```

Return the unit matrix.

4.8.7.2 zeroMatrix - zero matrix

```
{\tt zeroMatrix}({\tt self}) 	o {\it RingSquareMatrix}
```

Return the zero matrix.

```
>>> M = matrix.MatrixRing(3, rational.theIntegerRing)
>>> print M
M_3(Z)
>>> M.unitMatrix()
[1L, OL, OL]+[OL, 1L, OL]+[OL, OL, 1L]
>>> M.zero
[OL, OL, OL]+[OL, OL, OL]+[OL, OL, OL]
```

4.8.7.3 getInstance(class function) - get cached instance

```
\texttt{getInstance(cls, size:} \ integer, \ \texttt{scalars:} \ \textit{CommutativeRing}) \\ \rightarrow \textit{RingSquareMatrix}
```

Return an instance of MatrixRing of given size and ring of scalars.

The merit of using the method instead of the constructor is that the instances created by the method are cached and reused for efficiency.

Examples

>>> print MatrixRing.getInstance(3, rational.theIntegerRing)
M 3(Z)

4.8.8 Subspace – subspace of finite dimensional vector space

```
\begin{array}{lll} \textbf{Subspace(row:} & integer, & \textbf{column:} & integer=0, & \textbf{compo:} & compo=0, \\ \textbf{coeff\_ring:} & CommutativeRing=0, & \textbf{isbasis:} & True/False=\textbf{None}) \\ & \rightarrow Subspace \end{array}
```

Create subspace of some finite dimensional vector space over a field.

Subspace is subclass of **FieldMatrix**.

See Matrix for getting information about the initialization. The subspace expresses the space generated by column vectors of self.

If isbasis is True, we assume that column vectors are linearly independent.

Attributes

isbasis The attribute indicates the linear independence of column vectors, i.e., if they form a basis of the space then isbasis should be True, otherwise False.

4.8.8.1 issubspace - check subspace of self

```
Subspace(self, other: Subspace) \rightarrow True/False
```

Return True if the subspace instance is a subspace of the other, or False otherwise.

4.8.8.2 toBasis - select basis

```
	ext{toBasis(self)} 	o (None)
```

Rewrite self so that its column vectors form a basis, and set True to its isbasis.

The function does nothing if isbasis is already True.

4.8.8.3 supplementBasis - to full rank

```
	ext{supplementBasis(self)} 
ightarrow 	ext{Subspace}
```

Return full rank matrix by supplementing bases for self.

4.8.8.4 sumOfSubspaces - sum as subspace

```
\operatorname{sumOfSubspaces}(\operatorname{self}, \operatorname{other}: \mathit{Subspace}) 	o \mathit{Subspace}
```

Return a matrix whose columns form a basis for sum of two subspaces.

4.8.8.5 intersectionOfSubspaces - intersection as subspace

```
intersectionOfSubspaces(self, other: Subspace) 
ightarrow Subspace
```

Return a matrix whose columns form a basis for intersection of two subspaces.

```
>>> A = matrix.Subspace(4, 3, [1,2,3]+[4,5,6]+[7,8,9]+[10,11,12])
>>> A.toBasis()
>>> print A
1 2
4 5
7 8
10 11
>>> B = matrix.Subspace(3, 2, [1,2]+[3,4]+[5,7])
>>> print B.supplementBasis()
1 2 0
3 4 0
5 7 1
>>> C = matrix.Subspace(4, 1, [1,2,3,4])
>>> D = matrix.Subspace(4, 2, [2,-4]+[4,-3]+[6,-2]+[8,-1])
>>> print C.intersectionOfSubspaces(D)
-2/1
-4/1
-6/1
-8/1
```

4.8.8.6 fromMatrix(class function) - create subspace

Create a Subspace instance from a matrix instance mat, whose class can be any of subclasses of Matrix.

Please use this method if you want a Subspace instance for sure.

4.8.9 createMatrix[function] - create an instance

```
 \begin{array}{lll} \text{createMatrix(row: } integer, \text{ column: } integer=0, \text{ compo: } compo=0, \\ \text{coeff\_ring: } CommutativeRing=\text{None}) \\ & \rightarrow \text{RingMatrix} \end{array}
```

Create an instance of RingMatrix, RingSquareMatrix, FieldMatrix or FieldSquareMatrix.

Your input determines the class automatically by examining the matrix size and the coefficient ring. See Matrix or SquareMatrix for getting information about the initialization.

4.8.10 identityMatrix(unitMatrix)[function] - unit matrix

$egin{aligned} ext{identityMatrix(size:} \ &ing/CommutativeRing. \ & ightarrow ext{RingMatrix} \end{aligned}$	$integer, \ Element = { m None})$	coeff:	Commutative R-
$egin{aligned} ext{unitMatrix(size:} \ ing/CommutativeRing \ & o ext{RingMatrix} \end{aligned}$	coeff:	Commutative R-	

Return size-dimensional unit matrix.

coeff enables us to create matrix not only in integer but in coefficient ring which is determined by coeff.

coeff must be an instance of Ring or a multiplicative unit (one).

4.8.11 zeroMatrix[function] – zero matrix

```
 \begin{array}{lll} \textbf{zeroMatrix(row:} & \textit{integer,} & \textbf{column:} & \textit{0}{=}, & \textbf{coeff:} & \textit{CommutativeR-ing/CommutativeRingElement}{=} \textbf{None)} \\ & & \rightarrow \texttt{RingMatrix} \end{array}
```

Return $row \times column$ zero matrix.

coeff enables us to create matrix not only in integer but in coefficient ring which is determined by coeff.

coeff must be an instance of **Ring** or a additive unit (zero). If column is abbreviated, column is set same to row.

```
>>> M = matrix.createMatrix(3, [1,2,3]+[4,5,6]+[7,8,9])
>>> print M
1 2 3
4 5 6
7 8 9
>>> 0 = matrix.zeroMatrix(2, 3, imaginary.ComplexField())
>>> print 0
0 + 0j 0 + 0j 0 + 0j
0 + 0j 0 + 0j 0 + 0j
```

${\bf 4.9 \quad module-module/ideal\ with\ HNF}$

- Classes
 - Submodule
 - Module
 - Ideal
 - $\ Ideal_with_generator$

4.9.1 Submodule – submodule as matrix representation

Initialize (Constructor)

```
 \begin{array}{lll} \textbf{Submodule(row:} & integer, & column: & integer, & compo: & compo=0, \\ \textbf{coeff\_ring:} & CommutativeRing=0, & \textbf{ishnf:} & True/False=\textbf{None}) \\ & \rightarrow & Submodule \end{array}
```

Create a submodule with matrix representation.

Submodule is subclass of **RingMatrix**.

We assume that coeff_ring is a PID (principal ideal domain). Then, we have the HNF(hermite normal form) corresponding to a matrices.

If ishnf is True, we assume that the input matrix is a HNF.

Attributes

ishnf If the matrix is a HNF, then ishnf should be True, otherwise False.

4.9.1.1 getGenerators – generator of module

$\operatorname{getGenerators}(\operatorname{self}) o \mathit{list}$

Return a (current) generator of the module self.

Return the list of vectors consisting of a generator.

4.9.1.2 isSubmodule - Check whether submodule of self

```
isSubmodule(self, other: Submodule) 
ightarrow True/False
```

Return True if the submodule instance is a submodule of the other, or False otherwise.

4.9.1.3 isEqual – Check whether self and other are same module

isEqual(self, other: Submodule) ightarrow True/False

Return True if the submodule instance is other as module, or False otherwise.

You should use the method for equality test of module, not matrix. For equality test of matrix simply, use self==other.

4.9.1.4 is Contain - Check whether other is in self

```
isContains(self, other: vector. Vector) \rightarrow True/False
```

Determine whether other is in self or not.

.

If you want to represent other as linear combination with the HNF generator of self, use **represent element**.

4.9.1.5 toHNF - change to HNF

 $\mathrm{toHNF}(\mathrm{self}) o (None)$

Rewrite self to HNF (hermite normal form), and set True to its ishnf.

Note that HNF do not always give basis of self. (i.e. HNF may be redundant.)

4.9.1.6 sumOfSubmodules - sum as submodule

 $sumOfSubmodules(self, other: Submodule) \rightarrow Submodule$

Return a module which is sum of two subspaces.

4.9.1.7 intersectionOfSubmodules - intersection as submodule

intersectionOfSubmodules(self, other: Submodule)
ightarrow Submodule

Return a module which is intersection of two subspaces.

 $\mathbf{represent} \quad \mathbf{element}(\mathbf{self}, \, \mathbf{other}; \, \textit{vector.Vector}) \rightarrow \textit{vector.Vector/False}$

Represent other as a linear combination with HNF generators.

If other not in self, return False. Note that this method calls toHNF.

The method returns coefficients as an instance of **Vector**.

4.9.1.9 linear combination – compute linear combination

 $\textbf{linear combination(self, coeff: } \textit{list}) \rightarrow \textit{vector.Vector}$

For given **Z**-coefficients coeff, return a vector corresponding to a linear combination of (current) basis.

coeff must be a list of instances in **RingElement** whose size is the column of self.

```
>>> A = module.Submodule(4, 3, [1,2,3]+[4,5,6]+[7,8,9]+[10,11,12])
>>> A.toHNF()
>>> print A
9 1
6 1
3 1
0 1
>>> A.getGenerator
[Vector([9L, 6L, 3L, 0L]), Vector([1L, 1L, 1L, 1L])]
>>> V = vector.Vector([10,7,4,1])
>>> A.represent_element(V)
Vector([1L, 1L])
>>> V == A.linear_combination([1,1])
>>> B = module.Submodule(4, 1, [1,2,3,4])
>>> C = module.Submodule(4, 2, [2,-4]+[4,-3]+[6,-2]+[8,-1])
>>> print B.intersectionOfSubmodules(C)
4
6
8
```

4.9.2 fromMatrix(class function) - create submodule

Create a Submodule instance from a matrix instance mat, whose class can be any of subclasses of Matrix.

Please use this method if you want a Submodule instance for sure.

4.9.3 Module - module over a number field

Initialize (Constructor)

```
\begin{array}{lll} \textbf{Module(pair\_mat\_repr:} & \textit{list/matrix}, & \textbf{number\_field:} & \textit{algfield.NumberField,} & \textbf{base:} & \textit{list/matrix.SquareMatrix} \\ = \textbf{None,} & \textbf{ishnf:} \\ & \textit{bool} \\ = \textbf{False}) \\ & \rightarrow \textit{Module} \end{array}
```

Create a new module object over a number field.

A module is a finitely generated sub **Z**-module. Note that we do not assume rank of a module is deg(number_field).

We represent a module as generators respect to base module over $\mathbf{Z}[\theta]$, where θ is a solution of number_field.polynomial.

pair mat repr should be one of the following form:

- [M, d], where M is a list of integral tuple/vectors whose size is the degree of number—field and d is a denominator.
- [M, d], where M is an integral matrix whose the number of row is the degree of number_field and d is a denominator.
- a rational matrix whose the number of row is the degree of number field.

Also, base should be one of the following form:

- a list of rational tuple/vectors whose size is the degree of number field
- a square non-singular rational matrix whose size is the degree of number field

The module is internally represented as $\frac{1}{d}M$ with respect to **base**, where d is **denominator** and M is **mat_repr**. If ishnf is True, we assume that mat_repr is a HNF.

Attributes

 ${f mat_repr}$: an instance of ${f Submodule}\ M$ whose size is the degree of ${f number_field}$ denominator: an integer d

base: a square non-singular rational matrix whose size is the degree of number_fieldnumber field: the number field over which the module is defined

Operations

$\overline{}$	
operator	explanation
M==N	Return whether M and N are equal or not as module.
c in M	Check whether some element of ${\tt M}$ equals c.
M+N	Return the sum of M and N as module.
M*N	Return the product of M and N as the ideal computation.
	N must be module or scalar (i.e. an element of number field).
	If you want to compute the intersection of M and N , see intersect.
M**c	Return M to c based on the ideal multiplication.
repr(M)	Return the repr string of the module M.
str(M)	Return the str string of the module M.

```
>>> F = algfield.NumberField([2,0,1])
>>> M_1 = module.Module([matrix.RingMatrix(2,2,[1,0]+[0,2]), 2], F)
>>> M_2 = module.Module([matrix.RingMatrix(2,2,[2,0]+[0,5]), 3], F)
>>> print M_1
([1, 0]+[0, 2], 2)
over
([1L, OL]+[OL, 1L], NumberField([2, 0, 1]))
>>> print M_1 + M_2
([1L, 0L]+[0L, 2L], 6)
 over
([Rational(1, 1), Rational(0, 1)]+[Rational(0, 1), Rational(1, 1)],
NumberField([2, 0, 1]))
>>> print M_1 * 2
([1L, OL]+[OL, 2L], 1L)
 over
([Rational(1, 1), Rational(0, 1)]+[Rational(0, 1), Rational(1, 1)],
NumberField([2, 0, 1]))
>>> print M_1 * M_2
([2L, OL]+[OL, 1L], 6L)
 over
([Rational(1, 1), Rational(0, 1)]+[Rational(0, 1), Rational(1, 1)],
NumberField([2, 0, 1]))
>>> print M_1 ** 2
([1L, OL]+[OL, 2L], 4L)
 over
([Rational(1, 1), Rational(0, 1)]+[Rational(0, 1), Rational(1, 1)],
NumberField([2, 0, 1]))
```

4.9.3.1 toHNF - change to hermite normal form(HNF)

$$ext{toHNF(self)}
ightarrow (None)$$

Change self.mat repr to the hermite normal form(HNF).

4.9.3.2 copy - create copy

$\operatorname{copy}(\operatorname{self}) o \mathit{Module}$

Create copy of self.

4.9.3.3 intersect - intersection

$intersect(self, other: Module) \rightarrow Module$

Return intersection of self and other.

4.9.3.4 issubmodule - Check submodule

```
	ext{submodule(self, other: } \textit{Module)} 
ightarrow \textit{True/False}
```

Check self is submodule of other.

4.9.3.5 issupermodule - Check supermodule

```
	ext{supermodule(self, other: } \textit{Module)} 
ightarrow \textit{True/False}
```

Check self is supermodule of other.

4.9.3.6 represent element - Represent as linear combination

```
\begin{array}{l} \textbf{represent\_element(self, other: } \textit{algfield.BasicAlgNumber)} \\ \rightarrow \overline{\textit{list/False}} \end{array}
```

Represent other as a linear combination with generators of self. If other is not in self, return False.

Note that we do not assume self.mat_repr is HNF. The output is a list of integers if other is in self.

4.9.3.7 change base module - Change base

```
egin{array}{l} {	ext{change\_base\_module(self, other\_base: } list/matrix.RingSquareMatrix)} \ & 	o Module \end{array}
```

Return the module which is equal to self respect to other_base.

other_base follows the form base.

4.9.3.8 index - size of module

```
index(self) \rightarrow rational.Rational
```

Return the order of a residue group over self.base. That is, return [M:N] if $N \subset M$ or $[N:M]^{-1}$ if MsubsetN, where M is the module self and N is the module corresponding to self.base.

4.9.3.9 smallest rational - a Z-generator in the rational field

```
	ext{smallest} \quad 	ext{rational}(	ext{self}) 
ightarrow 	ext{rational}. 	ext{Rational}
```

Return the \mathbf{Z} -generator of intersection of the module self and the rational field.

```
>>> F = algfield.NumberField([1,0,2])
>>> M_1=module.Module([matrix.RingMatrix(2,2,[1,0]+[0,2]), 2], F)
>>> M_2=module.Module([matrix.RingMatrix(2,2,[2,0]+[0,5]), 3], F)
>>> print M_1.intersect(M_2)
([2L, OL]+[OL, 5L], 1L)
over
([Rational(1, 1), Rational(0, 1)]+[Rational(0, 1), Rational(1, 1)],
```

```
NumberField([2, 0, 1]))
>>> M_1.represent_element( F.createElement( [[2,4], 1] ) )
[4L, 4L]
>>> print M_1.change_base_module( matrix.FieldSquareMatrix(2, 2, [1,0]+[0,1]) / 2 )
([1L, 0L]+[0L, 2L], 1L)
  over
([Rational(1, 2), Rational(0, 1)]+[Rational(0, 1), Rational(1, 2)],
  NumberField([2, 0, 1]))
>>> M_2.index()
Rational(10, 9)
>>> M_2.smallest_rational()
Rational(2, 3)
```

4.9.4 Ideal - ideal over a number field

Initialize (Constructor)

Create a new ideal object over a number field.

Ideal is subclass of **Module**.

Refer to initialization of **Module**.

4.9.4.1 inverse – inverse

$inverse(self) \rightarrow \textit{Ideal}$

Return the inverse ideal of self.

This method calls self.number field.integer ring.

4.9.4.2 issubideal – Check subideal

$is subideal (self, other: \textit{Ideal}) \rightarrow \textit{Ideal}$

Check self is subideal of other.

4.9.4.3 issuperideal - Check superideal

$is superideal (self, other: \textit{Ideal}) \rightarrow \textit{Ideal}$

Check self is superideal of other.

4.9.4.4 gcd – greatest common divisor

$\gcd(\mathsf{self},\,\mathsf{other}\colon \mathit{Ideal}) o \mathit{Ideal}$

Return the greatest common divisor(gcd) of self and other as ideal.

This method simply executes self+other.

4.9.4.5 lcm – least common multiplier

$lcm(self, other: Ideal) \rightarrow Ideal$

Return the least common multiplier (lcm) of self and other as ideal.

This method simply calls the method intersect.

4.9.4.6 norm – norm

$\operatorname{norm}(\operatorname{self}) o \mathit{rational.Rational}$

Return the norm of self.

This method calls self.number field.integer ring.

4.9.4.7 isIntegral - Check integral

```
isIntegral(self) 
ightarrow \mathit{True/False}
```

Determine whether self is an integral ideal or not.

```
>>> M = module.Ideal([matrix.RingMatrix(2, 2, [1,0]+[0,2]), 2], F)
>>> print M.inverse()
([-2L, OL]+[OL, 2L], 1L)
   over
([Rational(1, 1), Rational(0, 1)]+[Rational(0, 1), Rational(1, 1)],
   NumberField([2, 0, 1]))
>>> print M * M.inverse()
([1L, OL]+[OL, 1L], 1L)
   over
([Rational(1, 1), Rational(0, 1)]+[Rational(0, 1), Rational(1, 1)],
   NumberField([2, 0, 1]))
>>> M.norm()
Rational(1, 2)
>>> M.isIntegral()
False
```

4.9.5 Ideal with generator - ideal with generator

Initialize (Constructor)

```
\textbf{Ideal with generator}(\textbf{generator}: \textit{list}) \rightarrow \textit{Ideal with generator}
```

Create a new ideal given as a generator.

generator is a list of instances in **BasicAlgNumber**, which represent generators, over a same number field.

Attributes

generator: generators of the ideal

number field: the number field over which generators are defined

Operations

operator	explanation
M==N	Return whether M and N are equal or not as module.
c in M	Check whether some element of M equals c.
M+N	Return the sum of M and N as ideal with generators.
M*N	Return the product of M and N as ideal with generators.
M**c	Return M to c based on the ideal multiplication.
repr(M)	Return the repr string of the ideal M.
str(M)	Return the str string of the ideal M.

```
>>> F = algfield.NumberField([2,0,1])
>>> M_1 = module.Ideal_with_generator([
   F.createElement([[1,0], 2]), F.createElement([[0,1], 1])
])
>>> M_2 = module.Ideal_with_generator([
   F.createElement([[2,0], 3]), F.createElement([[0,5], 3])
])
>>> print M_1
[BasicAlgNumber([[1, 0], 2], [2, 0, 1]), BasicAlgNumber([[0, 1], 1], [2, 0, 1])]
>>> print M_1 + M_2
[BasicAlgNumber([[1, 0], 2], [2, 0, 1]), BasicAlgNumber([[0, 1], 1], [2, 0, 1]),
```

```
BasicAlgNumber([[2, 0], 3], [2, 0, 1]), BasicAlgNumber([[0, 5], 3], [2, 0, 1])]
>>> print M_1 * M_2
[BasicAlgNumber([[1L, 0L], 3L], [2, 0, 1]), BasicAlgNumber([[0L, 5L], 6], [2, 0, 1]),
BasicAlgNumber([[0L, 2L], 3], [2, 0, 1]), BasicAlgNumber([[-10L, 0L], 3], [2, 0, 1])]
>>> print M_1 ** 2
[BasicAlgNumber([[1L, 0L], 4], [2, 0, 1]), BasicAlgNumber([[0L, 1L], 2], [2, 0, 1]),
BasicAlgNumber([[0L, 1L], 2], [2, 0, 1]), BasicAlgNumber([[-2L, 0L], 1], [2, 0, 1])]
```

4.9.5.1 copy - create copy

$$\operatorname{copy}(\operatorname{self}) o \operatorname{\textit{Ideal}} \ \ \operatorname{\textit{with}} \ \ \operatorname{\textit{generator}}$$

Create copy of self.

4.9.5.2 to HNFRepresentation - change to ideal with HNF

$\textbf{to} \hspace{0.2cm} \textbf{HNFRepresentation(self)} \rightarrow \textbf{\textit{Ideal}}$

Transform self to the corresponding ideal as HNF (hermite normal form) representation.

4.9.5.3 twoElementRepresentation - Represent with two element

$twoElementRepresentation(self) ightarrow \mathit{Ideal with generator}$

Transform self to the corresponding ideal as HNF (hermite normal form) representation.

If self is not a prime ideal, this method is not efficient.

4.9.5.4 smallest rational - a Z-generator in the rational field

$${
m smallest \; \; rational(self)}
ightarrow rational. Rational$$

Return the \mathbf{Z} -generator of intersection of the module self and the rational field.

This method calls to HNFRepresentation.

4.9.5.5 inverse – inverse

 $ext{inverse(self)} o ext{\it Ideal}$

Return the inverse ideal of self.

This method calls to HNFRepresentation.

4.9.5.6 norm – norm

$\operatorname{norm}(\operatorname{self}) o \mathit{rational.Rational}$

Return the norm of self.

This method calls to HNFRepresentation.

4.9.5.7 intersect - intersection

$intersect(self, other: \mathit{Ideal} \;\; \mathit{with} \;\; \mathit{generator}) \rightarrow \mathit{Ideal}$

Return intersection of self and other.

This method calls to HNFRepresentation.

4.9.5.8 issubideal – Check subideal

$is subideal(self, \, other: \, \textit{Ideal_with_generator}) \, \rightarrow \, \textit{Ideal}$

Check self is subideal of other.

This method calls ${f to}_{\begin{subarray}{c} \begin{subarray}{c} \begin{subarray}{$

4.9.5.9 issuperideal - Check superideal

```
issuperideal(self, other: \mathit{Ideal} \;\; \mathit{with} \;\; \mathit{generator}) 
ightarrow \mathit{Ideal}
```

This method calls $to_HNFRepresentation$.

```
>>> M = module.Ideal_with_generator([
F.createElement([[2,0], 3]), F.createElement([[0,2], 3]), F.createElement([[1,0], 3])
])
>>> print M.to_HNFRepresentation()
([2L, 0L, 0L, -4L, 1L, 0L]+[0L, 2L, 2L, 0L, 0L, 1L], 3L)
    over
([1L, 0L]+[0L, 1L], NumberField([2, 0, 1]))
>>> print M.twoElementRepresentation()
[BasicAlgNumber([[1L, 0], 3], [2, 0, 1]), BasicAlgNumber([[3, 2], 3], [2, 0, 1])]
>>> M.norm()
Rational(1, 9)
```

4.10 permute – permutation (symmetric) group

- Classes
 - Permute
 - ExPermute
 - PermGroup

4.10.1 Permute – element of permutation group

Initialize (Constructor)

 $\mathbf{Permute}(\mathbf{value:}\ \mathit{list/tuple},\ \mathbf{key:}\ \mathit{list/tuple}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Permute}$

 $Permute(val key: dict) \rightarrow Permute$

 $Permute(value: list/tuple, key: int=None) \rightarrow Permute$

Create an element of a permutation group.

An instance will be generated with "normal" way. That is, we input a key, which is a list of (indexed) all elements from some set, and a value, which is a list of all permuted elements.

Normally, you input two lists (or tuples) value and key with same length. Or you can input val_key as a dict whose values() is a list "value" and keys() is a list "key" in the sense of above. Also, there are some short-cut for inputting key:

- If key is [1, 2, ..., N], you do not have to input key.
- If key is $[0, 1, \ldots, N-1]$, input 0 as key.
- If key equals the list arranged through value in ascending order, input 1.
- \bullet If key equals the list arranged through value in descending order, input -1.

Attributes

 \mathbf{key} :

It expresses key.

data:

†It expresses indexed form of value.

Operations

operator	explanation
A==B	Check equality for A's value and B's one and A's key and B's one.
A*B	right multiplication (that is, $A \circ B$ with normal mapping way)
A/B	division (that is, $A \circ B^{-1}$)
A**B	powering
A.inverse()	inverse
A[c]	the element of value corresponding to c in key
A(lst)	permute 1st with A

```
>>> p1 = permute.Permute(['b','c','d','a','e'], ['a','b','c','d','e'])
>>> print p1
['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e'] -> ['b', 'c', 'd', 'a', 'e']
>>> p2 = permute.Permute([2, 3, 0, 1, 4], 0)
>>> print p2
[0, 1, 2, 3, 4] \rightarrow [2, 3, 0, 1, 4]
>>> p3 = permute.Permute(['c','a','b','e','d'], 1)
>>> print p3
['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e'] -> ['c', 'a', 'b', 'e', 'd']
>>> print p1 * p3
['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e'] -> ['d', 'b', 'c', 'e', 'a']
>>> print p3 * p1
['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e'] -> ['a', 'b', 'e', 'c', 'd']
>>> print p1 ** 4
['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e'] -> ['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e']
>>> p1['d']
'na'
>>> p2([0, 1, 2, 3, 4])
[2, 3, 0, 1, 4]
```

4.10.1.1 setKey – change key

```
\operatorname{setKey}(\operatorname{self}, \operatorname{key}: \operatorname{\it list/tuple}) \to \operatorname{\it Permute}
```

Set other key.

key must be list or tuple with same length to key.

4.10.1.2 getValue – get "value"

```
{
m getValue(self)} 
ightarrow {\it list}
```

Return (not data) value of self.

4.10.1.3 getGroup – get PermGroup

```
\operatorname{getGroup}(\operatorname{self}) 	o \operatorname{\textit{PermGroup}}
```

Return **PermGroup** to which self belongs.

4.10.1.4 numbering – give the index

```
\operatorname{numbering}(\operatorname{self}) 	o int
```

Number self in the permutation group. (Slow method)

The numbering is made to fit the following inductive definition for dimension of the permutation group.

If numbering of $[\sigma_1, \sigma_2, ..., \sigma_{n-2}, \sigma_{n-1}]$ on (n-1)-dimension is k, numbering of $[\sigma_1, \sigma_2, ..., \sigma_{n-2}, \sigma_{n-1}, n]$ on n-dimension is k and numbering of $[\sigma_1, \sigma_2, ..., \sigma_{n-2}, n, \sigma_{n-1}]$ on n-dimension is k + (n-1)!, and so on. (See Room of Points And Lines, part 2, section 15, paragraph 2 (Japanese))

4.10.1.5 order – order of the element

$\mathrm{order}(\mathrm{self}) o int/long$

Return order as the element of group.

This method is faster than general group method.

4.10.1.6 ToTranspose – represent as transpositions

$ToTranspose(self) \rightarrow \textit{ExPermute}$

Represent self as a composition of transpositions.

Return the element of **ExPermute** with transpose (2-dimensional cyclic) type. It is recursive program, and it would take more time than the method **ToCyclic**.

4.10.1.7 ToCyclic - corresponding ExPermute element

$ToCyclic(self) \rightarrow \textit{ExPermute}$

Represent self as a composition of cyclic representations.

Return the element of **ExPermute**. †This method decomposes self into coprime cyclic permutations, so each cyclic is commutative.

4.10.1.8 sgn – sign of the permutation

$\operatorname{sgn}(\operatorname{self}) o int$

Return the sign of permutation group element.

If self is even permutation, that is, self can be written as a composition of an even number of transpositions, it returns 1. Otherwise, that is, for odd permutation, it returns -1.

4.10.1.9 types – type of cyclic representation

$ext{types(self)} ightarrow ext{\it list}$

Return cyclic type defined by each cyclic permutation element length.

4.10.1.10 ToMatrix – permutation matrix

$ToMatrix(self) \rightarrow Matrix$

Return permutation matrix.

The row and column correspond to key. If self G satisfies G[a] = b, then (a, b)-element of the matrix is 1. Otherwise, the element is 0.

```
>>> p = Permute([2,3,1,5,4])
>>> p.numbering()
28
>>> p.order()
>>> p.ToTranspose()
[(4,5)(1,3)(1,2)](5)
>>> p.sgn()
>>> p.ToCyclic()
[(1,2,3)(4,5)](5)
>>> p.types()
'(2,3)type'
>>> print p.ToMatrix()
0 1 0 0 0
0 0 1 0 0
1 0 0 0 0
0 0 0 0 1
0 0 0 1 0
```

4.10.2 ExPermute – element of permutation group as cyclic representation

Initialize (Constructor)

ExPermute(dim: int, value: list, key: list=None) \rightarrow ExPermute

Create an element of a permutation group.

An instance will be generated with "cyclic" way. That is, we input a value, which is a list of tuples and each tuple expresses a cyclic permutation. For example, $(\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \sigma_3, \ldots, \sigma_k)$ is one-to-one mapping, $\sigma_1 \mapsto \sigma_2, \sigma_2 \mapsto \sigma_3, \ldots, \sigma_k \mapsto \sigma_1$.

dim must be positive integer, that is, an instance of int, long or **Integer**. key should be a list whose length equals dim. Input a list of tuples whose elements are in key as value. Note that you can abbreviate key if key has the form [1, 2, ..., N]. Also, you can input 0 as key if key has the form [0, 1, ..., N-1].

Attributes

 \dim :

It expresses dim.

key:

It expresses key.

data:

†It expresses indexed form of value.

Operations

operator	explanation
A==B	Check equality for A's value and B's one and A's key and B's one.
A*B	right multiplication (that is, $A \circ B$ with normal mapping way)
A/B	division (that is, $A \circ B^{-1}$)
A**B	powering
A.inverse()	inverse
A[c]	the element of value corresponding to c in key
A(lst)	permute 1st with A
str(A)	simple representation. use simplify.
repr(A)	representation

```
>>> p1 = permute.ExPermute(5, [('a', 'b')], ['a','b','c','d','e'])
>>> print p1
[('a', 'b')] <['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e']>
>>> p2 = permute.ExPermute(5, [(0, 2), (3, 4, 1)], 0)
>>> print p2
[(0, 2), (1, 3, 4)] <[0, 1, 2, 3, 4]>
>>> p3 = permute.ExPermute(5, [('b','c')], ['a','b','c','d','e'])
>>> print p1 * p3
[('a', 'b'), ('b', 'c')] <['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e']>
>>> print p3 * p1
[('b', 'c'), ('a', 'b')] <['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e']>
>>> p1['c']
'c'
>>> p2([0, 1, 2, 3, 4])
[2, 4, 0, 1, 3]
```

4.10.2.1 set Key – change key

$\operatorname{setKey}(\operatorname{self},\operatorname{key}:\operatorname{\it list}) \to \operatorname{\it ExPermute}$

Set other key.

key must be a list whose length equals dim.

4.10.2.2 getValue – get "value"

${ m getValue(self)} ightarrow {\it list}$

Return (not data) value of self.

4.10.2.3 getGroup – get PermGroup

$\operatorname{getGroup}(\operatorname{self}) o \operatorname{\textit{PermGroup}}$

Return **PermGroup** to which self belongs.

4.10.2.4 order – order of the element

$\mathrm{order}(\mathrm{self}) o int/long$

Return order as the element of group.

This method is faster than general group method.

4.10.2.5 ToNormal – represent as normal style

$ext{ToNormal(self)} o ext{\it Permute}$

Represent self as an instance of **Permute**.

4.10.2.6 simplify – use simple value

$simplify(self) \rightarrow \textit{ExPermute}$

Return the more simple cyclic element.

†This method uses **ToNormal** and **ToCyclic**.

4.10.2.7 sgn – sign of the permutation

```
\operatorname{sgn}(\operatorname{self}) 	o int
```

Return the sign of permutation group element.

If self is even permutation, that is, self can be written as a composition of an even number of transpositions, it returns 1. Otherwise, that is, for odd permutation, it returns -1.

```
>>> p = permute.ExPermute(5, [(1, 2, 3), (4, 5)])
>>> p.order()
6
>>> print p.ToNormal()
[1, 2, 3, 4, 5] -> [2, 3, 1, 5, 4]
>>> p * p
[(1, 2, 3), (4, 5), (1, 2, 3), (4, 5)] <[1, 2, 3, 4, 5]>
>>> (p * p).simplify()
[(1, 3, 2)] <[1, 2, 3, 4, 5]>
```

4.10.3 PermGroup – permutation group

Initialize (Constructor)

```
egin{aligned} & \operatorname{PermGroup}(\texttt{key:}\ int/long) 
ightarrow \operatorname{PermGroup} \ & \operatorname{PermGroup}(\texttt{key:}\ list/tuple) 
ightarrow \operatorname{PermGroup} \end{aligned}
```

Create a permutation group.

Normally, input list as key. If you input some integer N, key is set as $[1,\ 2,\ldots,N].$

Attributes

key:

It expresses key.

Operations

operator	explanation
A==B	Check equality for A's value and B's one and A's key and B's one.
card(A)	same as grouporder
str(A)	simple representation
repr(A)	representation

```
>>> p1 = permute.PermGroup(['a','b','c','d','e'])
>>> print p1
['a','b','c','d','e']
>>> card(p1)
120L
```

4.10.3.1 createElement - create an element from seed

 ${
m createElement(self, seed: \it list/tuple/dict)}
ightarrow \it Permute \ {
m createElement(self, seed: \it list)}
ightarrow \it ExPermute \ {
m }$

Create new element in self.

seed must be the form of "value" on **Permute** or **ExPermute**

4.10.3.2 identity – group identity

$identity(self) \rightarrow \textit{Permute}$

Return the identity of self as normal type.

For cyclic type, use **identity_c**.

4.10.3.3 identity c – group identity as cyclic type

$\text{identity} \quad \textbf{c(self)} \rightarrow \textit{ExPermute}$

Return permutation group identity as cyclic type.

For normal type, use **identity**.

4.10.3.4 grouporder – order as group

$ext{grouporder(self)} ightarrow int/long$

Compute the order of self as group.

4.10.3.5 randElement - random permute element

$ext{randElement(self)} ightarrow ext{\it Permute}$

Create random new element as normal type in self.

```
>>> p = permute.PermGroup(5)
>>> print p.createElement([3, 4, 5, 1, 2])
[1, 2, 3, 4, 5] -> [3, 4, 5, 1, 2]
>>> print p.createElement([(1, 2), (3, 4)])
[(1, 2), (3, 4)] <[1, 2, 3, 4, 5]>
>>> print p.identity()
[1, 2, 3, 4, 5] -> [1, 2, 3, 4, 5]
>>> print p.identity_c()
[] <[1, 2, 3, 4, 5]>
>>> p.grouporder()
120L
>>> print p.randElement()
[1, 2, 3, 4, 5] -> [3, 4, 5, 2, 1]
```

4.11 rational – integer and rational number

rational module provides integer and rational numbers, as class Rational, Integer, RationalField, and IntegerRing.

• Classes

- Integer
- IntegerRing
- Rational
- RationalField

This module also provides following constants:

theIntegerRing:

the Integer Ring is represents the ring of rational integers. An instance of Integer Ring.

theRationalField:

the Rational Field is represents the field of rational numbers. An instance of Rational Field.

4.11.1 Integer – integer

Integer is a class of integer. Since 'int' and 'long' do not return rational for division, it is needed to create a new class.

This class is a subclass of **CommutativeRingElement** and long.

Initialize (Constructor)

 ${\rm Integer(integer:}\ integer) \rightarrow Integer$

Construct a Integer object. If argument is omitted, the value becomes 0.

4.11.1.1 getRing - get ring object

```
\operatorname{getRing}(\operatorname{self}) 	o \operatorname{\textit{IntegerRing}}
```

Return an IntegerRing object.

4.11.1.2 actAdditive – addition of binary addition chain

```
actAdditive(self, other: integer) \rightarrow Integer
```

Act on other additively, i.e. n is expanded to n time additions of other. Naively, it is:

```
return sum([+other for _ in range(self)]) but, here we use a binary addition chain.
```

4.11.1.3 actMultiplicative - multiplication of binary addition chain

```
actMultiplicative(self, other: integer) \rightarrow Integer
```

Act on other multiplicatively, i.e. n is expanded to n time multiplications of other. Naively, it is:

return reduce(lambda x,y: x*y, [+other for _ in range(self)]) but, here we use a binary addition chain.

4.11.2 IntegerRing – integer ring

The class is for the ring of rational integers.

This class is a subclass of **CommutativeRing**.

Initialize (Constructor)

IntegerRing() ightarrow IntegerRing

Create an instance of IntegerRing. You may not want to create an instance, since there is already theIntegerRing.

Attributes

zero:

It expresses the additive unit 0. (read only)

one:

It expresses the multiplicative unit 1. (read only)

Operations

operator	explanation
x in Z	return whether an element is in or not.
repr(Z)	return representation string.
str(Z)	return string.

4.11.2.1 createElement - create Integer object

```
createElement(self, seed: integer) \rightarrow Integer
```

Return an Integer object with seed. seed must be int, long or rational.Integer.

4.11.2.2 gcd – greatest common divisor

```
\gcd(\texttt{self}, \, \texttt{n:} \, \textit{integer}, \, \texttt{m:} \, \textit{integer}) \, \rightarrow \, \textit{Integer}
```

Return the greatest common divisor of given 2 integers.

4.11.2.3 extgcd – extended GCD

```
\operatorname{extgcd}(\operatorname{self}, \operatorname{n:} \operatorname{integer}, \operatorname{m:} \operatorname{integer}) \to \operatorname{Integer}
```

Return a tuple (u, v, d); they are the greatest common divisor d of two given integers n and m and u, v such that d = nu + mv.

4.11.2.4 lcm – lowest common multiplier

```
\mathbf{lcm}(\mathbf{self}, \, \mathbf{n} \colon integer, \, \mathbf{m} \colon integer) \, \to \, Integer
```

Return the lowest common multiple of given 2 integers. If both are zero, it raises an exception.

4.11.2.5 getQuotientField - get rational field object

```
\operatorname{getQuotientField}(\operatorname{self}) 	o 	extit{RationalField}
```

Return the rational field (RationalField).

4.11.2.6 issubring – subring test

```
issubring(self, other: Ring) \rightarrow bool
```

Report whether another ring contains the integer ring as subring.

If other is also the integer ring, the output is True. In other cases it depends on the implementation of another ring's issuperring method.

4.11.2.7 issuperring – superring test

 $issuperring(self, other: Ring) \rightarrow bool$

Report whether the integer ring contains another ring as subring. If other is also the integer ring, the output is True. In other cases it depends on the implementation of another ring's issubring method.

4.11.3 Rational – rational number

The class of rational numbers.

Initialize (Constructor)

```
 \begin{array}{l} \textbf{Rational(numerator: } \textit{numbers}, \texttt{ denominator: } \textit{numbers}{=}1) \\ \rightarrow \textit{Integer} \end{array}
```

Construct a rational number from:

- integers,
- float, or
- Rational.

Other objects can be converted if they have to Rational methods. Otherwise raise ${\tt TypeError}.$

4.11.3.1 getRing - get ring object

```
\operatorname{getRing}(\operatorname{self}) 	o 	extit{RationalField}
```

Return a RationalField object.

4.11.3.2 decimalString - represent decimal

```
	ext{decimalString(self, N: } integer) 
ightarrow string
```

Return a string of the number to N decimal places.

4.11.3.3 expand – continued-fraction representation

```
\mathbf{expand}(\mathbf{self},\, \mathsf{base} \colon integer,\, \mathsf{limit} \colon integer) \to string
```

Return the nearest rational number whose denominator is a power of base and at most limit if base is positive integer.

Otherwise, i.e. base=0, returns the nearest rational number whose denominator is at most limit.

base must be non-negative integer.

4.11.4 RationalField – the rational field

RationalField is a class of field of rationals. The class has the single instance **theRationalField**.

This class is a subclass of **QuotientField**.

Initialize (Constructor)

RationalField() ightarrow RationalField

Create an instance of Rational Field. You may not want to create an instance, since there is already the Rational Field.

Attributes

zero:

It expresses the additive unit 0, namely Rational(0, 1). (read only)

one:

It expresses the multiplicative unit 1, namely Rational(1, 1). (read only)

Operations

operator	explanation
x in Q	return whether an element is in or not.
str(Q)	return string.

4.11.4.1 createElement - create Rational object

```
createElement(self, numerator: integer\ or\ \mathbf{Rational}, denominator: integer=1)
```

 $\rightarrow Rational$

Create a Rational object.

4.11.4.2 class Number – get class number

```
{
m classNumber(self)} 
ightarrow integer
```

Return 1, since the class number of the rational field is one.

4.11.4.3 getQuotientField – get rational field object

```
\mathtt{getQuotientField}(\mathtt{self}) 	o 	extit{RationalField}
```

Return the rational field itself.

4.11.4.4 issubring – subring test

```
issubring(self, other: Ring) \rightarrow bool
```

Report whether another ring contains the rational field as subring.

If other is also the rational field, the output is True. In other cases it depends on the implementation of another ring's issuperring method.

4.11.4.5 issuperring – superring test

```
issuperring(self, other: Ring) \rightarrow bool
```

Report whether the rational field contains another ring as subring.

If other is also the rational field, the output is True. In other cases it depends on the implementation of another ring's issubring method.

4.12 real – real numbers and its functions

The module real provides arbitrary precision real numbers and their utilities. The functions provided are corresponding to the math standard module.

• Classes

- RealField
- Real
- †Constant
- †ExponentialPowerSeries
- $\ \dagger Ab solute Error$
- †RelativeError

• Functions

- exp
- sqrt
- log
- log1piter
- piGaussLegendre
- eContinuedFraction
- floor
- ceil
- tranc
- $-\sin$
- cos
- tan
- sinh
- cosh
- tanh
- asin
- acos
- atan
- atan2
- hypot
- pow
- degrees
- radians

- fabs
- fmod
- frexp
- ldexp
- $\ Euler Transform \\$

This module also provides following constants:

 \mathbf{e} :

This constant is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

 \mathbf{pi} :

This constant is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

 $\mathbf{Log2}$:

This constant is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

${\bf the Real Field}$:

the Real Field is the instance of $\bf Real Field$.

4.12.1 RealField – field of real numbers

The class is for the field of real numbers. The class has the single instance the Real Field.

This class is a subclass of **Field**.

Initialize (Constructor)

$ext{RealField}() ightarrow extit{RealField}$

Create an instance of RealField. You may not want to create an instance, since there is already **theRealField**.

Attributes

 ${f zero}$:

It expresses the additive unit 0. (read only)

one:

It expresses the multiplicative unit 1. (read only)

Operations

operator	explanation	
x in R	membership test; return whether an element is in or not.	
repr(R)	return representation string.	
str(R)	return string.	

${\bf 4.12.1.1} \quad {\bf getCharacteristic-get\ characteristic}$

```
\operatorname{getCharacteristic}(\operatorname{self}) 	o integer
```

Return the characteristic, zero.

$\bf 4.12.1.2 \quad is subring - subring \ test$

```
issubring(self, aRing: Ring) \rightarrow bool
```

Report whether another ring contains the real field as subring.

${\bf 4.12.1.3}\quad is superring-superring\ test$

 $is superring(self, aRing: \frac{Ring}{}) \rightarrow \mathit{bool}$

Report whether the real field contains another ring as subring.

4.12.2 Real – a Real number

Real is a class of real number. This class is only for consistency for other **Ring** object.

This class is a subclass of **CommutativeRingElement**.

All implemented operators in this class are delegated to Float type.

Initialize (Constructor)

 $\mathbf{Real}(\mathbf{value:}\ number) \,\rightarrow\, Real$

Construct a Real object.

value must be int, long, Float or Rational.

4.12.2.1 getRing – get ring object

 $\operatorname{getRing}(\operatorname{self}) o \mathit{RealField}$

Return the real field instance.

4.12.3 Constant – real number with error correction

This class is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.4 Exponential Power Series – exponential power series

This class is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.5 AbsoluteError – absolute error

This class is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.6 RelativeError – relative error

This class is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.7 exp(function) – exponential value

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.8 sqrt(function) – square root

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

$4.12.9 \log(\text{function}) - \log(\text{arithm})$

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.10 $\log 1 \text{piter}(\text{function}) - \text{iterator of } \log (1+x)$

 $log1piter(xx: number) \rightarrow iterator$

Return iterator for $\log(1+x)$.

4.12.11 piGaussLegendre(function) – pi by Gauss-Legendre

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.12 eContinuedFraction(function) – Napier's Constant by continued fraction expansion

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.13 floor(function) – floor the number

 $floor(x: number) \rightarrow integer$

Return the biggest integer not more than x.

4.12.14 ceil(function) – ceil the number

 $ceil(x: number) \rightarrow integer$

Return the smallest integer not less than x.

4.12.15 tranc(function) - round-off the number

 $tranc(x: number) \rightarrow integer$

Return the number of rounded off x.

$4.12.16 \sin(\text{function}) - \sin e \text{ function}$

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.17 $\cos(\text{function}) - \cos(\text{function})$

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.18 tan(function) – tangent function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.19 sinh(function) – hyperbolic sine function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.20 cosh(function) – hyperbolic cosine function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.21 tanh(function) - hyperbolic tangent function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.22 asin(function) – arc sine function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.23 acos(function) – arc cosine function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.24 atan(function) - arc tangent function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.25 atan2(function) – arc tangent function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.26 hypot(function) - Euclidean distance function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.27 pow(function) – power function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.28 degrees(function) – convert angle to degree

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.29 radians(function) – convert angle to radian

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.30 fabs(function) – absolute value

 $fabs(x: number) \rightarrow number$

Return absolute value of x

4.12.31 fmod(function) – modulo function over real

 $fmod(x: number, y: number) \rightarrow number$

Return x - ny, where **n** is the quotient of **x** / y, rounded towards zero to an integer.

4.12.32 frexp(function) – expression with base and binary exponent

 $ext{frexp(x: } number)
ightarrow (m,e)$

Return a tuple (m,e), where $x=m\times 2^e,\ 1/2\leq \mathtt{abs}(\mathtt{m})<1$ and e is an integer.

†This function is provided as the counter-part of math.frexp, but it might not be useful.

$\begin{array}{ccc} \textbf{4.12.33} & \textbf{ldexp(function)} - \textbf{construct number from base and} \\ & \textbf{binary exponent} \end{array}$

 $ldexp(x: number, i: number) \rightarrow number$

Return $x \times 2^i$.

4.12.34 EulerTransform(function) – iterator yields terms of Euler transform

 $ext{EulerTransform(iterator: } iterator)
ightarrow iterator$

Return an iterator which yields terms of Euler transform of the given iterator.

†

4.13 ring – for ring object

• Classes

- Ring
- CommutativeRing
- Field
- $\ \mathbf{Quotient Field}$
- RingElement
- CommutativeRingElement
- FieldElement
- $\ \mathbf{Quotient Field Element}$
- Ideal
- ResidueClassRing
- ResidueClass
- CommutativeRingProperties

• Functions

- $-\ \mathbf{getRingInstance}$
- getRing
- inverse
- $\ \mathbf{exact_division}$

4.13.1 †Ring – abstract ring

Ring is an abstract class which expresses that the derived classes are (in mathematical meaning) rings.

Definition of ring (in mathematical meaning) is as follows: Ring is a structure with addition and multiplication. It is an abelian group with addition, and a monoid with multiplication. The multiplication obeys the distributive law.

This class is abstract and cannot be instantiated.

Attributes

zero additive unit

one multiplicative unit

Operations

operator	explanation	
A==B	Return whether M and N are equal or not.	

4.13.1.1 createElement – create an element

```
createElement(self, seed: (undefined)) \rightarrow RingElement
```

Return an element of the ring with seed.

This is an abstract method.

4.13.1.2 getCharacteristic - characteristic as ring

```
\operatorname{getCharacteristic}(\operatorname{self}) 	o integer
```

Return the characteristic of the ring.

The Characteristic of a ring is the smallest positive integer n s.t. na = 0 for any element a of the ring, or 0 if there is no such natural number. This is an abstract method.

4.13.1.3 issubring – check subring

issubring(self, other: $RingElement) \rightarrow True/False$

Report whether another ring contains the ring as a subring.

This is an abstract method.

4.13.1.4 issuperring – check superring

issuperring(self, other: RingElement) $\rightarrow True/False$

Report whether the ring is a superring of another ring.

This is an abstract method.

4.13.1.5 getCommonSuperring – get common ring

 ${\tt getCommonSuperring(self, other: \textit{RingElement})} o \textit{RingElement}$

Return common super ring of self and another ring.

This method uses **issubring**, **issuperring**.

4.13.2 †CommutativeRing – abstract commutative ring

Commutative Ring is an abstract subclass of ${\bf Ring}$ whose multiplication is commutative.

CommutativeRing is subclass of Ring.

There are some properties of commutative rings, algorithms should be chosen accordingly. To express such properties, there is a class **CommutativeRing-Properties**.

This class is abstract and cannot be instantiated.

Attributes

properties an instance of CommutativeRingProperties

4.13.2.1 getQuotientField – create quotient field

$\operatorname{getQuotientField}(\operatorname{self}) o \operatorname{\it QuotientField}$

Return the quotient field of the ring.

This is an abstract method.

If quotient field of self is not available, it should raise exception.

4.13.2.2 isdomain - check domain

$$isdomain(self) \rightarrow True/False/None$$

Return True if the ring is actually a domain, False if not, or None if uncertain.

4.13.2.3 isnoetherian - check Noetherian domain

$isnoetherian(self) ightarrow \mathit{True/False/None}$

Return True if the ring is actually a Noetherian domain, False if not, or None if uncertain.

4.13.2.4 isufd - check UFD

$$isufd(self) \rightarrow True/False/None$$

Return True if the ring is actually a unique factorization domain (UFD), False if not, or None if uncertain.

4.13.2.5 ispid – check PID

$ispid(self) \rightarrow \mathit{True/False/None}$

Return True if the ring is actually a principal ideal domain (PID), False if not, or None if uncertain.

4.13.2.6 iseuclidean - check Euclidean domain

$iseuclidean(self) \rightarrow True/False/None$

Return True if the ring is actually a Euclidean domain, False if not, or None if uncertain.

4.13.2.7 isfield - check field

$$isfield(self) \rightarrow \mathit{True/False/None}$$

Return True if the ring is actually a field, False if not, or None if uncertain.

4.13.2.8 registerModuleAction - register action as ring

registerModuleAction(self, action ring: RingElement, action: function)

 \rightarrow (None)

Register a ring action_ring, which act on the ring through action so the ring be an action ring module.

See hasaction, getaction.

4.13.2.9 hasaction – check if the action has

has action (self, action ring: RingElement) $\rightarrow True/False$

Return True if action ring is registered to provide action.

See registerModuleAction, getaction.

4.13.2.10 getaction – get the registered action

 $ext{hasaction(self, action ring: } \textit{RingElement)}
ightarrow \textit{function}$

Return the registered action for action_ring.

 $See\ {\bf register Module Action},\ {\bf has action}.$

4.13.3 †Field – abstract field

Field is an abstract class which expresses that the derived classes are (in mathematical meaning) fields, i.e., a commutative ring whose multiplicative monoid is a group.

Field is subclass of **CommutativeRing**. **getQuotientField** and **isfield** are not abstract (trivial methods).

This class is abstract and cannot be instantiated.

 $4.13.3.1 \quad \gcd-\gcd$

 $\gcd(\texttt{self}, \texttt{ a: } \textit{FieldElement}, \texttt{ b: } \textit{FieldElement}) \rightarrow \textit{FieldElement}$

Return the greatest common divisor of a and b.

A field is trivially a UFD and should provide gcd. If we can implement an algorithm for computing gcd in an Euclidean domain, we should provide the method corresponding to the algorithm.

4.13.4 †QuotientField – abstract quotient field

QuotientField is an abstract class which expresses that the derived classes are (in mathematical meaning) quotient fields.

self is the quotient field of domain.

QuotientField is subclass of **Field**.

In the initialize step, it registers trivial action named as baseaction; i.e. it expresses that an element of a domain acts an element of the quotient field by using the multiplication in the domain.

This class is abstract and cannot be instantiated.

Attributes

basedomain domain which generates the quotient field self

4.13.5 †RingElement – abstract element of ring

RingElement is an abstract class for elements of rings.

This class is abstract and cannot be instantiated.

Operations

operator	explanation
A==B	equality (abstract)

$\bf 4.13.5.1 \quad getRing-getRing$

 $\operatorname{getRing}(\operatorname{self}) o extit{Ring}$

Return an object of a subclass of Ring, to which the element belongs.

This is an abstract method.

4.13.6 †CommutativeRingElement – abstract element of commutative ring

 $\label{lem:commutative} Commutative Ring Element \ is \ an \ abstract \ class \ for \ elements \ of \ commutative \ rings.$

This class is abstract and cannot be instantiated.

4.13.6.1 mul_module_action - apply a module action

```
	ext{mul module action(self, other: } \textit{RingElement}) 
ightarrow (\textit{undefined})
```

Return the result of a module action. other must be in one of the action rings of self's ring.

This method uses **getRing**, **CommutativeRing**getaction. We should consider that the method is abstract.

4.13.6.2 exact division – division exactly

```
\begin{array}{c} \text{exact\_division(self, other: } CommutativeRingElement)} \\ \rightarrow CommutativeRingElement \end{array}
```

In UFD, if other divides self, return the quotient as a UFD element.

The main difference with / is that / may return the quotient as an element of quotient field. Simple cases:

- in a Euclidean domain, if remainder of euclidean division is zero, the division // is exact.
- in a field, there's no difference with /.

If other doesn't divide self, raise ValueError. Though __divmod__ can be used automatically, we should consider that the method is abstract.

$4.13.7 \quad \dagger FieldElement-abstract\ element\ of\ field$

FieldElement is an abstract class for elements of fields.

FieldElement is subclass of **CommutativeRingElement**. **exact_division** are not abstract (trivial methods).

This class is abstract and cannot be instantiated.

QuotientFieldElement class is an abstract class to be used as a super class of concrete quotient field element classes.

QuotientFieldElement is subclass of **FieldElement**. self expresses $\frac{\text{numerator}}{\text{denominator}}$ in the quotient field.

This class is abstract and should not be instantiated. denominator should not be 0.

Attributes

numerator numerator of self

denominator denominator of self

Operations

operator	explanation	
A+B	addition	
A-B	subtraction	
A*B	multiplication	
A**B	powering	
A/B	division	
- A	sign reversion (additive inversion)	
inverse(A)	multiplicative inversion	
A==B	equality	

4.13.9 †Ideal – abstract ideal

Ideal class is an abstract class to represent the finitely generated ideals.

†Because the finitely-generatedness is not a restriction for Noetherian rings and in the most cases only Noetherian rings are used, it is general enough.

This class is abstract and should not be instantiated. generators must be an element of the aring or a list of elements of the aring. If generators is an element of the aring, we consider self is the principal ideal generated by generators.

Attributes

ring the ring belonged to by self

generators generators of the ideal self

Operations

operator	explanation
I+J	addition $\{i+j \mid i \in I, j \in J\}$
I*J	multiplication $IJ = \{ \sum_{i,j} ij \mid i \in I, j \in J \}$
I==J	equality
e in I	For e in the ring, to which the ideal I belongs.

4.13.9.1 issubset – check subset

 $issubset(self, other: Ideal) \rightarrow True/False$

Report whether another ideal contains this ideal.

We should consider that the method is abstract.

4.13.9.2 issuperset – check superset

 $issuperset(self, other: Ideal) \rightarrow True/False$

Report whether this ideal contains another ideal.

We should consider that the method is abstract.

4.13.9.3 reduce - reduction with the ideal

issuperset(self, other: Ideal)
ightarrow True/False

Reduce an element with the ideal to simpler representative.

This method is abstract.

4.13.10 †ResidueClassRing – abstract residue class ring

Initialize (Constructor)

$\begin{array}{l} {\rm ResidueClassRing(ring:}~\textit{CommutativeRing},~{\rm ideal:}~\textit{Ideal}) \\ \rightarrow {\rm ResidueClassRing} \end{array}$

A residue class ring R/I, where R is a commutative ring and I is its ideal.

ResidueClassRing is subclass of **CommutativeRing**.

one, zero are not abstract (trivial methods).

Because we assume that ring is Noetherian, so is ring.

This class is abstract and should not be instantiated. ring should be an instance of **CommutativeRing**, and ideal must be an instance of **Ideal**, whose ring attribute points the same ring with the given ring.

Attributes

ring the base ring R

ideal the ideal I

Operations

operator	explanation	
A==B	equality	
e in A	report whether e is in the residue ring self.	

4.13.11 †ResidueClass – abstract an element of residue class ring

Initialize (Constructor)

$\begin{aligned} \text{ResidueClass(x: } \textit{CommutativeRingElement}, \text{ ideal: } \textit{Ideal)} \\ \rightarrow \text{ResidueClass} \end{aligned}$

Element of residue class ring x+I, where I is the modulus ideal and x is a representative element.

ResidueClass is subclass of **CommutativeRingElement**.

This class is abstract and should not be instantiated. ideal corresponds to the ideal ${\cal I}.$

Operations

These operations uses **reduce**.

operator	explanation
x+y	addition
x-y	subtraction
x*y	multiplication
A==B	equality

$\begin{array}{ccc} \textbf{4.13.12} & \textbf{\dagger} \textbf{Commutative} \textbf{Ring} \textbf{Properties} - \textbf{properties} \textbf{for Commutative} \textbf{Ring} \textbf{Properties} \\ & \textbf{mutative} \textbf{Ring} \textbf{Properties} \end{array}$

Initialize (Constructor)

$Commutative Ring Properties ((None)) \rightarrow Commutative Ring Properties$

Boolean properties of ring.

Each property can have one of three values; *True*, *False*, or *None*. Of course *True* is true and *False* is false, and *None* means that the property is not set neither directly nor indirectly.

CommutativeRingProperties class treats

- Euclidean (Euclidean domain),
- PID (Principal Ideal Domain),
- UFD (Unique Factorization Domain),
- Noetherian (Noetherian ring (domain)),
- field (Field)

Methods

4.13.12.1 isfield - check field

$$isfield(self) \rightarrow \mathit{True/False/None}$$

Return True/False according to the field flag value being set, otherwise return None.

4.13.12.2 setIsfield – set field

```
isfield(self, value: True/False) \rightarrow (None)
```

Set True/False value to the field flag. Propagation:

• True \rightarrow euclidean

4.13.12.3 iseuclidean – check euclidean

$$iseuclidean(self) \rightarrow True/False/None$$

Return True/False according to the euclidean flag value being set, otherwise return None.

4.13.12.4 set Iseuclidean – set euclidean

$isfield(self, value: True/False) \rightarrow (None)$

Set True/False value to the euclidean flag. Propagation:

- True \rightarrow PID
- False \rightarrow field

4.13.12.5 ispid – check PID

$$ispid(self) \rightarrow \mathit{True/False/None}$$

Return ${\it True}/{\it False}$ according to the PID flag value being set, otherwise return None.

4.13.12.6 set Ispid – set PID

 $ispid(self, value: \mathit{True/False}) \rightarrow (None)$

Set True/False value to the euclidean flag. Propagation:

- True \rightarrow UFD, Noetherian
- False \rightarrow euclidean

4.13.12.7 isufd – check UFD

$\mathrm{isufd}(\mathrm{self}) o \mathit{True/False/None}$

Return True/False according to the UFD flag value being set, otherwise return None.

4.13.12.8 setIsufd – set UFD

 $isufd(self, value: \mathit{True/False}) \rightarrow (None)$

Set True/False value to the UFD flag. Propagation:

• True \rightarrow domain

• False \rightarrow PID

4.13.12.9 isnoetherian - check Noetherian

$isnoetherian(self) ightarrow \mathit{True/False/None}$

Return True/False according to the Noetherian flag value being set, otherwise return None.

4.13.12.10 setIsnoetherian – set Noetherian

$isnoetherian(self, value: \mathit{True/False}) ightarrow (None)$

Set True/False value to the Noetherian flag. Propagation:

- True \rightarrow domain
- False \rightarrow PID

4.13.12.11 isdomain - check domain

$isdomain(self) \rightarrow \mathit{True/False/None}$

Return True/False according to the domain flag value being set, otherwise return None.

4.13.12.12 set Isdomain – set domain

$${\tt isdomain(self, \, value: } \textit{True/False}) \rightarrow \textit{(None)}$$

Set True/False value to the domain flag. Propagation:

• False \rightarrow UFD, Noetherian

4.13.13 getRingInstance(function)

$\operatorname{getRingInstance}(\circ \operatorname{bj:} \textit{RingElement}) \rightarrow \textit{RingElement}$

Return a RingElement instance which equals obj.

Mainly for python built-in objects such as int or float.

4.13.14 getRing(function)

```
getRing(obj: RingElement) \rightarrow Ring
```

Return a ring to which obj belongs.

Mainly for python built-in objects such as int or float.

4.13.15 inverse(function)

$inverse(obj: CommutativeRingElement) \rightarrow QuotientFieldElement$

Return the inverse of obj. The inverse can be in the quotient field, if the obj is an element of non-field domain.

Mainly for python built-in objects such as int or float.

4.13.16 exact_division(function)

```
\begin{array}{l} \textbf{exact\_division(self:} \ \textit{RingElement}, \ \texttt{other:} \ \textit{RingElement}) \\ \rightarrow \ \textit{RingElement} \end{array}
```

Return the division of self by other if the division is exact. Mainly for python built-in objects such as int or float.

```
>>> print ring.getRing(3)
7
```

>>> print ring.exact_division(6, 3)

4.14 vector – vector object and arithmetic

- Classes
 - Vector
- Functions
 - $-\ inner Product$

This module provides an exception class.

VectorSizeError: Report vector size is invalid. (Mainly for operations with two vectors.)

4.14.1 Vector – vector class

Vector is a class for vector.

Initialize (Constructor)

```
Vector(compo: list) \rightarrow Vector
```

Create Vector object from compo. compo must be a list of elements which are an integer or an instance of **RingElement**.

Attributes

compo:

It expresses component of vector.

Operations

Note that index is 1-origin, which is standard in mathematics field.

operator	explanation	
u+v	Vector sum.	
u-v	Vector subtraction.	
A*v	Multiplication vector with matrix	
a*v	or scalar multiplication.	
v//a	Scalar division.	
v%n	Reduction each elements of compo	
- v	element negation.	
u==v	equality.	
u!=v	inequality.	
v[i]	Return the coefficient of i-th element of Vector.	
v[i] = c	Replace the coefficient of i-th element of Vector by c.	
len(v)	return length of compo .	
repr(v)	return representation string.	
str(v)	return string of compo .	

```
>>> A = vector.Vector([1, 2])
>>> A
Vector([1, 2])
>>> A.compo
[1, 2]
```

```
>>> B = vector.Vector([2, 1])
>>> A + B
Vector([3, 3])
>>> A % 2
Vector([1, 0])
>>> A[1]
1
>>> len(B)
```

Methods

4.14.1.1 copy – copy itself

```
\mathtt{copy}(\mathtt{self}) 	o \mathit{Vector}
```

Return copy of self.

4.14.1.2 set – set other compo

```
\operatorname{set}(\operatorname{self},\operatorname{compo:}\operatorname{\mathit{list}}) \to (\operatorname{None})
```

Substitute compo with compo.

4.14.1.3 indexOfNoneZero - first non-zero coordinate

```
indexOfNoneZero(self) \rightarrow integer
```

Return the first index of non-zero element of self.compo.

†Raise ValueError if all elements of **compo** are zero.

4.14.1.4 toMatrix – convert to Matrix object

```
toMatrix(self, as column: \textit{bool} = False) \rightarrow \textit{Matrix}
```

Return Matrix object using createMatrix function.

If as_column is True, create the column matrix with self. Otherwise, create the row matrix.

```
>>> A = vector.Vector([0, 4, 5])
>>> A.indexOfNoneZero()
2
>>> print A.toMatrix()
0 4 5
>>> print A.toMatrix()
```

4 5

4.14.2 innerProduct(function) – inner product

```
innerProduct(bra: \textit{Vector}, \ ket: \textit{Vector}) \rightarrow \textit{RingElement}
```

Return the inner product of bra and ket.

The function supports Hermitian inner product for elements in the complex number field.

†Note that the returned value depends on type of elements.

```
>>> A = vector.Vector([1, 2, 3])
>>> B = vector.Vector([2, 1, 0])
>>> vector.innerProduct(A, B)
4
>>> C = vector.Vector([1+1j, 2+2j, 3+3j])
>>> vector.innerProduct(C, C)
(28+0j)
```

4.15 factor.ecm – ECM factorization

This module has curve type constants:

S: aka SUYAMA. Suyama's parameter selection strategy.

B: aka BERNSTEIN. Bernstein's parameter selection strategy.

A1: aka ASUNCION1. Asuncion's parameter selection strategy variant 1.

A2: aka ASUNCION2. ditto 2.

A3: aka ASUNCION3. ditto 3.

A4: aka ASUNCION4. ditto 4.

A5: aka ASUNCION5. ditto 5.

See J.S.Asuncion's master thesis [11] for details of each family.

4.15.1 ecm – elliptic curve method

```
ecm(n: integer, curve_type: curvetype=A1, incs: integer=3, trials: integer=20, verbose: bool=False)
\rightarrow integer
```

Find a factor of n by elliptic curve method.

If it cannot find non-trivial factor of n, then it returns 1.

curve_type should be chosen from curvetype constants above.

The second optional argument incs specifies a number of changes of bounds. The function repeats factorization trials several times changing curves with a fixed bounds.

Optional argument trials can control how quickly move on to the next higher bounds.

verbose toggles verbosity.

4.16 factor.find – find a factor

All methods in this module return one of a factor of given integer. If it failes to find a non-trivial factor, it returns 1. Note that 1 is a factor anyway.

verbose boolean flag can be specified for verbose reports. To receive these messages, you have to prepare a logger (see logging).

4.16.1 trialDivision – trial division

```
trialDivision(n: integer, **options) \rightarrow integer
```

Return a factor of n by trial divisions.

options can be either one of the following:

- 1. start and stop as range parameters. In addition to these, step is also available.
- 2. iterator as an iterator of primes.

If options is not given, the function divides n by primes from 2 to the floor of the square root of n until a non-trivial factor is found.

verbose boolean flag can be specified for verbose reports.

4.16.2 pmom – p - 1 method

```
pmom(n: integer, **options) \rightarrow integer
```

Return a factor of n by the p-1 method.

The function tries to find a non-trivial factor of n using Algorithm 8.8.2 (p-1) first stage) of [13]. In the case of $n=2^i$, the function will not terminate. Due to the nature of the method, the method may return the trivial factor only.

verbose Boolean flag can be specified for verbose reports, though it is not so verbose indeed.

4.16.3 rhomethod – ρ method

```
\mathbf{rhomethod(n:}\ integer,\ \mathbf{**} \mathtt{options}\ ) \ \rightarrow \ integer
```

Return a factor of n by Pollard's ρ method.

The implementation refers the explanation in [15]. Due to the nature of the

method, a factorization may return the trivial factor only.

verbose Boolean flag can be specified for verbose reports.

```
>>> factor.find.trialDivision(1001)
7
>>> factor.find.trialDivision(1001, start=10, stop=32)
11
>>> factor.find.pmom(1001)
91
>>> import logging
>>> logging.basicConfig()
>>> factor.find.rhomethod(1001, verbose=True)
INFO:nzmath.factor.find:887 748
13
```

4.17 factor.methods – factoring methods

It uses methods of **factor.find** module or some heavier methods of related modules to find a factor. Also, classes of **factor.util** module is used to track the factorization process. options are normally passed to the underlying function without modification.

This module uses the following type:

factorlist:

factorlist is a list which consists of pairs (base, index). Each pair means $base^{index}$. The product of these terms expresses prime factorization.

4.17.1 factor – easiest way to factor

```
factor(n: integer, method: string='default', **options) \rightarrow factorlist
```

Factor the given positive integer n.

By default, use several methods internally.

The optional argument method can be:

- 'ecm': use elliptic curve method.
- 'mpqs': use MPQS method.
- 'pmom': use p-1 method.
- 'rhomethod': use Pollard's ρ method.
- 'trialDivision': use trial division.

(†In fact, the initial letter of method name suffices to specify.)

4.17.2 ecm – elliptic curve method

```
ecm(n: integer, **options) \rightarrow factorlist
```

Factor the given integer n by elliptic curve method.

(See ecm of factor.ecm module.)

4.17.3 mpqs – multi-polynomial quadratic sieve method

```
mpqs(n: integer, **options) \rightarrow factorlist
```

Factor the given integer n by multi-polynomial quadratic sieve method.

(See mpqsfind of factor.mpqs module.)

4.17.4 pmom -p-1 method

```
pmom(n: integer, **options) \rightarrow factorlist
```

Factor the given integer n by p-1 method.

The method may fail unless n has an appropriate factor for the method. (See **pmom** of **factor.find** module.)

4.17.5 rhomethod – ρ method

```
rhomethod(n: integer, **options) \rightarrow factorlist
```

Factor the given integer n by Pollard's ρ method.

The method is a probabilistic method, possibly fails in factorizations. (See **rhomethod** of **factor.find** module.)

4.17.6 trialDivision - trial division

```
trialDivision(n: integer, **options) \rightarrow factorlist
```

Factor the given integer n by trial division.

options for the trial sequence can be either:

- 1. start and stop as range parameters.
- 2. iterator as an iterator of primes.
- 3. eratosthenes as an upper bound to make prime sequence by sieve.

If none of the options above are given, the function divides n by primes from 2 to the floor of the square root of n until a non-trivial factor is found. (See **trialDivision** of **factor.find** module.)

```
>>> factor.methods.factor(10001)
[(73, 1), (137, 1)]
>>> factor.methods.ecm(1000001)
[(101L, 1), (9901L, 1)]
```

4.18 factor.misc – miscellaneous functions related factoring

- Functions
 - allDivisors
 - primeDivisors
 - primePowerTest
 - squarePart
- Classes
 - FactoredInteger

4.18.1 allDivisors – all divisors

```
allDivisors(n: integer) \rightarrow list
```

Return all factors divide n as a list.

4.18.2 primeDivisors – prime divisors

```
primeDivisors(n: integer) \rightarrow list
```

Return all prime factors divide n as a list.

4.18.3 primePowerTest – prime power test

```
primePowerTest(n: integer) \rightarrow (integer, integer)
```

Judge whether n is of the form p^k with a prime p or not. If it is true, then (p, k) will be returned, otherwise (n, 0).

This function is based on Algo. 1.7.5 in [13].

4.18.4 squarePart – square part

```
squarePart(n: integer) \rightarrow integer
```

Return the largest integer whose square divides n.

```
>>> factor.misc.allDivisors(1001)
[1, 7, 11, 13L, 77, 91L, 143L, 1001L]
>>> factor.misc.primeDivisors(100)
[2, 5]
>>> factor.misc.primePowerTest(128)
(2, 7)
>>> factor.misc.squarePart(128)
gr
```

4.18.5 FactoredInteger – integer with its factorization

Initialize (Constructor)

```
egin{aligned} 	ext{FactoredInteger} (	ext{integer}, 	ext{ factors: } 	ext{dict} = \{\}) \ &
ightarrow 	ext{FactoredInteger} \end{aligned}
```

Integer with its factorization information.

If factors is given, it is a dict of type prime:exponent and the product of $prime^{exponent}$ is equal to the integer. Otherwise, factorization is carried out in initialization.

A class method to create a new **FactoredInteger** object from partial factorization information partial.

Operations

operator	explanation
F * G	multiplication (other operand can be an int)
F ** n	powering
F == G	equal
F != G	not equal
F % G	remainder (the result is an int)
F // G	same as exact division method
str(F)	string
int(F)	convert to Python integer (forgetting factorization)

Methods

4.18.5.1 is divisible by

```
\begin{array}{c} \text{is\_divisible\_by(self, other: } integer/\overline{\textbf{FactoredInteger}}) \\ \rightarrow bool \end{array}
```

Return True if other divides self.

4.18.5.2 exact division

```
\begin{array}{c} \text{exact\_division(self, other: } integer/\overline{\textbf{FactoredInteger}}) \\ \rightarrow \overline{\textbf{FactoredInteger}} \end{array}
```

Divide by other. The other must divide self.

4.18.5.3 divisors

```
	ext{divisors(self)} 
ightarrow 	ext{\it list}
```

Return all divisors as a list.

4.18.5.4 proper divisors

```
	ext{proper divisors(self)} 	o 	ext{\it list}
```

Return all proper divisors (i.e. divisors excluding 1 and self) as a list.

4.18.5.5 prime divisors

```
	ext{prime divisors(self)} 	o 	ext{\it list}
```

Return all prime divisors as a list.

4.18.5.6 square part

```
square \quad part(self, as factored: bool = False) \rightarrow integer/FactoredInteger \ object
```

Return the largest integer whose square divides self.

If an optional argument asfactored is true, then the result is also a **Factored-Integer object**. (default is False)

4.18.5.7 squarefree part

```
squarefree part(self, as factored: bool=False) \rightarrow integer/FactoredInteger object
```

Return the largest squarefree integer which divides self.

If an optional argument asfactored is true, then the result is also a **Factored-Integer object** object. (default is False)

4.18.5.8 copy

```
copy(self) \rightarrow FactoredInteger object
```

Return a copy of the object.

4.19 factor.mpqs – MPQS

4.19.1 mpqsfind

```
\begin{array}{c} \mathbf{mpqsfind(n:} \ integer, \ s: \ integer=0, \ f: \ integer=0, \ m: \ integer=0, \ verbose: \\ bool=False \ ) \\ & \rightarrow integer \end{array}
```

Find a factor of n by MPQS(multiple-polynomial quadratic sieve) method.

MPQS is suitable for factorizing a large number.

Optional arguments s is the range of sieve, f is the number of factor base, and m is multiplier. If these are not specified, the function guesses them from n.

4.19.2 mpqs

```
\begin{array}{l} \mathsf{mpqs}(\mathtt{n:}\ integer,\ \mathtt{s:}\ integer{=}0,\ \mathtt{f:}\ integer{=}0,\ \mathtt{m:}\ integer{=}0\ )\\ \to \mathbf{factorlist} \end{array}
```

Factorize n by MPQS method.

Optional arguments are same as **mpqsfind**.

4.19.3 eratosthenes

 $eratos thenes (\texttt{n:} \textit{integer}) \rightarrow \textit{list}$

Enumerate the primes up to n.

4.20 factor.util – utilities for factorization

- Classes
 - FactoringInteger
 - FactoringMethod

This module uses following type:

factorlist:

factorlist is a list which consists of pairs (base, index). Each pair means $base^{index}$. The product of those terms expresses whole prime factorization.

4.20.1 FactoringInteger - keeping track of factorization

Initialize (Constructor)

FactoringInteger(number: integer) ightarrow FactoringInteger

This is the base class for factoring integers.

number is stored in the attribute **number**. The factors will be stored in the attribute **factors**, and primality of factors will be tracked in the attribute **primality**.

The given number must be a composite number.

Attributes

number:

The composite number.

factors:

Factors known at the time being referred.

primality:

A dictionary of primality information of known factors. True if the factor is prime, False composite, or None undetermined.

Methods

4.20.1.1 getNextTarget - next target

```
\texttt{getNextTarget}(\texttt{self}, \texttt{cond:} \textit{function} = \texttt{None}) \rightarrow \textit{integer}
```

Return the next target which meets cond.

If cond is not specified, then the next target is a composite (or undetermined) factor of **number**.

cond should be a binary predicate whose arguments are base and index. If there is no target factor, LookupError will be raised.

4.20.1.2 getResult – result of factorization

```
getResult(self) \rightarrow factors
```

Return the currently known factorization of the **number**.

4.20.1.3 register - register a new factor

```
register(self, divisor: integer, isprime: bool=None) 
ightarrow
```

Register a divisor of the **number** if the divisor is a true divisor of the number.

The number is divided by the divisor as many times as possible.

The optional argument is prime tells the primality of the divisor (default to undetermined).

$\bf 4.20.1.4 \quad sortFactors - sort\ factors$

```
sortFactors(self) \rightarrow
```

Sort factors list.

This affects the result of **getResult**.

```
>>> A = factor.util.FactoringInteger(100)
>>> A.getNextTarget()
```

```
100
>>> A.getResult()
[(100, 1)]
>>> A.register(5, True)
>>> A.getResult()
[(5, 2), (4, 1)]
>>> A.sortFactors()
>>> A.getResult()
[(4, 1), (5, 2)
>>> A.primality
{4: None, 5: True}
>>> A.getNextTarget()
4
```

4.20.2 FactoringMethod – method of factorization

Initialize (Constructor)

FactoringMethod() ightarrow FactoringMethod

Base class of factoring methods.

All methods defined in **factor.methods** are implemented as derived classes of this class. The method which users may call is **factor** only. Other methods are explained for future implementers of a new factoring method.

Methods

4.20.2.1 factor – do factorization

```
\begin{array}{ll} {\it factor(self, number: integer, return\_type: str='list', need\_sort: bool=False\ )} \\ &\rightarrow {\it factorlist} \end{array}
```

Return the factorization of the given positive integer number.

The default returned type is a **factorlist**.

A keyword option return type can be as the following:

- 1. 'list' for default type (factorlist).
- 2. 'tracker' for FactoringInteger.

Another keyword option need_sort is Boolean: True to sort the result. This should be specified with return_type='list'.

4.20.2.2 †continue factor – continue factorization

Continue factoring of the given tracker and return the result of factorization.

The default returned type is **FactoringInteger**, but if return_type is specified as 'list' then it returns **factorlist**. The primality is judged by a function specified in primeq optional keyword argument, which default is **primeq**.

4.20.2.3 †find – find a factor

```
\mathbf{find}(\mathbf{self},\,\mathbf{target:}\,\,\mathit{integer},\,\,\mathbf{**} \mathtt{options}\,\,)\,\rightarrow\,\mathit{integer}
```

Find a factor from the target number.

This method has to be overridden, or **factor** method should be overridden not to call this method.

4.20.2.4 †generate – generate prime factors

```
{\tt generate(self, target: \it integer, **options)} \rightarrow {\it integer}
```

Generate prime factors of the target number with their valuations.

The method may terminate with yielding (1, 1) to indicate the factorization is incomplete.

This method has to be overridden, or **factor** method should be overridden not to call this method.

4.21 poly.factor – polynomial factorization

The factor module is for factorizations of integer coefficient univariate polynomials.

This module using following type:

polynomial:

polynomial is the polynomial generated by function poly.uniutil.polynomial.

4.21.1 brute_force_search - search factorization by brute force

Find the factorization of f by searching a factor which is a product of some combination in fp_factors. The combination is searched by brute force.

The argument fp_factors is a list of poly.uniutil.FinitePrimeFieldPolynomial.

4.21.2 divisibility test – divisibility test

```
divisibility \operatorname{test}(\mathtt{f} \colon polynomial, \ \mathtt{g} \colon polynomial) \to bool
```

Return Boolean value whether f is divisible by g or not, for polynomials.

4.21.3 minimum absolute injection – send coefficients to minimum absolute representation

```
{\tt minimum\_absolute\_injection(f: \it polynomial)} \rightarrow {\tt F}
```

Return an integer coefficient polynomial F by injection of a $\mathbf{Z}/p\mathbf{Z}$ coefficient polynomial f with sending each coefficient to minimum absolute representatives.

The coefficient ring of given polynomial f must be IntegerResidueClass-Ring or FinitePrimeField.

4.21.4 padic factorization – p-adic factorization

```
padic factorization(f: polynomial) \rightarrow p, factors
```

Return a prime p and a p-adic factorization of given integer coefficient square-free polynomial f. The result factors have integer coefficients, injected from \mathbb{F}_p to its minimum absolute representation.

†The prime is chosen to be:

- 1. f is still squarefree mod p,
- 2. the number of factors is not greater than with the successive prime.

The given polynomial f must be poly.uniutil.IntegerPolynomial.

4.21.5 upper_bound_of_coefficient -Landau-Mignotte bound of coefficients

```
	ext{upper bound of coefficient(f: } polynomial) 
ightarrow long
```

Compute Landau-Mignotte bound of coefficients of factors, whose degree is no greater than half of the given f.

The given polynomial f must have integer coefficients.

4.21.6 zassenhaus – squarefree integer polynomial factorization by Zassenhaus method

```
	ext{zassenhaus}(	ext{f: polynomial}) 
ightarrow 	ext{list of factors } f
```

Factor a squarefree integer coefficient polynomial ${\tt f}$ with Berlekamp-Zassenhaus method.

4.21.7 integer polynomial factorization – Integer polynomial factorization

```
integer polynomial factorization (f: polynomial) 
ightarrow factor
```

Factor an integer coefficient polynomial f with Berlekamp-Zassenhaus method.

factor output by the form of list of tuples that formed (factor, index).

4.22 poly.formalsum – formal sum

• Classes

- †FormalSumContainerInterface
- DictFormalSum
- †ListFormalSum

The formal sum is mathematically a finite sum of terms, A term consists of two parts: coefficient and base. All coefficients in a formal sum are in a common ring, while bases are arbitrary.

Two formal sums can be added in the following way. If there are terms with common base, they are fused into a new term with the same base and coefficients added

A coefficient can be looked up from the base. If the specified base does not appear in the formal sum, it is null.

We refer the following for convenience as terminit:

terminit:

terminit means one of types to initialize dict. The dictionary constructed from it will be considered as a mapping from bases to coefficients.

Note for beginner You may need USE only DictFormalSum, but may have to READ the description of FormalSumContainerInterface because interface (all method names and their semantics) is defined in it.

4.22.1 FormalSumContainerInterface – interface class Initialize (Constructor)

Since the interface is an abstract class, do not instantiate.

The interface defines what "formal sum" is. Derived classes must provide the following operations and methods.

Operations

operator	explanation
f + g	$\operatorname{addition}$
f - g	subtraction
- f	negation
+f	new copy
f * a, a * f	multiplication by scalar a
f == g	equality
f != g	inequality
f[b]	get coefficient corresponding to a base b
b in f	return whether base b is in f
len(f)	number of terms
hash(f)	hash

${\bf 4.22.1.1 \quad construct_with_default-copy\text{-}constructing}$

construct with default(self, maindata: terminit) o Formal Sum Container Interface

Create a new formal sum of the same class with self, with given only the maindata and use copy of self's data if necessary.

4.22.1.2 iterterms – iterator of terms

$iterterms(self) \rightarrow iterator$

Return an iterator of the terms.

Each term yielded from iterators is a (base, coefficient) pair.

4.22.1.3 itercoefficients – iterator of coefficients

itercoefficients(self) o iterator

Return an iterator of the coefficients.

4.22.1.4 iterbases – iterator of bases

iterbases(self) ightarrow iterator

Return an iterator of the bases.

4.22.1.5 terms – list of terms

$ext{terms(self)} o ext{\it list}$

Return a list of the terms.

Each term in returned lists is a (base, coefficient) pair.

4.22.1.6 coefficients – list of coefficients

$\mathrm{coefficients}(\mathtt{self}) o \mathit{list}$

Return a list of the coefficients.

4.22.1.7 bases – list of bases

$bases(self) \rightarrow \mathit{list}$

Return a list of the bases.

4.22.1.8 terms map – list of terms

terms map(self, func: function) \rightarrow FormalSumContainerInterface

Map on terms, i.e., create a new formal sum by applying func to each term. func has to accept two parameters base and coefficient, then return a new term pair.

4.22.1.9 coefficients map – list of coefficients

$\operatorname{coefficients} \quad \operatorname{map}(\operatorname{self}) o FormalSumContainerInterface$

Map on coefficients, i.e., create a new formal sum by applying func to each coefficient.

func has to accept one parameters coefficient, then return a new coefficient.

$\mathbf{4.22.1.10} \quad \mathbf{bases} \quad \mathbf{map-list} \ \mathbf{of} \ \mathbf{bases}$

${\bf bases-map(self)} \rightarrow \textit{FormalSumContainerInterface}$

Map on bases, i.e., create a new formal sum by applying func to each base.

func has to accept one parameters base, then return a new base.

4.22.2 DictFormalSum – formal sum implemented with dictionary

A formal sum implementation based on dict.

This class inherits **FormalSumContainerInterface**. All methods of the interface are implemented.

Initialize (Constructor)

$ext{DictFormalSum(args: } terminit, ext{ defaultvalue: } RingElement = ext{None}) \ o DictFormalSum$

See **terminit** for type of args. It makes a mapping from bases to coefficients. The optional argument default value is the default value for __getitem__, i.e., if there is no term with the specified base, a look up attempt returns the default value. It is, thus, an element of the ring to which other coefficients belong.

4.22.3 ListFormalSum – formal sum implemented with list

A formal sum implementation based on list.

This class inherits **FormalSumContainerInterface**. All methods of the interface are implemented.

Initialize (Constructor)

$\begin{array}{l} \textbf{ListFormalSum}(\texttt{args:} \ \textit{terminit}, \ \texttt{defaultvalue:} \ \textit{RingElement}{=} \textbf{None}) \\ \rightarrow \textit{ListFormalSum} \end{array}$

See **terminit** for type of args. It makes a mapping from bases to coefficients. The optional argument default value is the default value for <u>__getitem__</u>, i.e., if there is no term with the specified base, a look up attempt returns the default value. It is, thus, an element of the ring to which other coefficients belong.

4.23 poly.groebner – Gröbner Basis

The groebner module is for computing Gröbner bases for multivariate polynomial ideals.

This module uses the following types:

polynomial:

polynomial is the polynomial generated by function polynomial.

order:

order is the order on terms of polynomials.

4.23.1 buchberger – naïve algorithm for obtaining Gröbner basis

```
\textbf{buchberger}(\textbf{generating: } \textit{list}, \, \textbf{order: } \textit{order}) \rightarrow [\textit{polynomials}]
```

Return a Gröbner basis of the ideal generated by given generating set of polynomials with respect to the order.

Be careful, this implementation is very naive.

The argument generating is a list of **Polynomial**; the argument order is an order.

4.23.2 normal_strategy – normal algorithm for obtaining Gröbner basis

```
normal strategy(generating: list, order: order) \rightarrow [polynomials]
```

Return a Gröbner basis of the ideal generated by given generating set of polynomials with respect to the order.

This function uses the 'normal strategy'.

The argument generating is a list of **Polynomial**; the argument order is an order.

4.23.3 reduce groebner – reduce Gröbner basis

```
reduce groebner(gbasis: list, order: order) \rightarrow [polynomials]
```

Return the reduced Gröbner basis constructed from a Gröbner basis.

The output satisfies that:

- lb(f) divides $lb(g) \Rightarrow g$ is not in reduced Gröbner basis, and
- monic.

The argument gbasis is a list of polynomials, a Gröbner basis (not merely a generating set).

4.23.4 s polynomial – S-polynomial

```
 s\_polynomial(f: \textit{polynomial}, g: \textit{polynomial}, order: \textit{order}) \\ \rightarrow [\textit{polynomials}]
```

Return S-polynomial of f and g with respect to the order.

```
S(f,g) = (\operatorname{lc}(g)*T/\operatorname{lb}(f))*f - (\operatorname{lc}(f)*T/\operatorname{lb}(g))*g, where T = \operatorname{lcm}(\operatorname{lb}(f),\ \operatorname{lb}(g)).
```

Examples

```
>>> f = multiutil.polynomial({(1,0):2, (1,1):1},rational.theRationalField, 2)
>>> g = multiutil.polynomial({(0,1):-2, (1,1):1},rational.theRationalField, 2)
>>> lex = termorder.lexicographic_order
>>> groebner.s_polynomial(f, g, lex)
UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial({(1, 0): 2, (0, 1): 2})
>>> gb = groebner.normal_strategy([f, g], lex)
>>> for gb_poly in gb:
        print gb_poly
UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial({(1, 1): 1, (1, 0): 2})
UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial({(1, 1): 1, (0, 1): -2})
UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial({(1, 0): 2, (0, 1): 2})
UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial({(0, 2): -2, (0, 1): -4.0})
>>> gb_red = groebner.reduce_groebner(gb, lex)
>>> for gb_poly in gb_red:
        print gb_poly
UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial({(1, 0): Rational(1, 1), (0, 1): Rational(1, 1)})
UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial(\{(0, 2): Rational(1, 1), (0, 1): 2.0\})
```

4.24 poly.hensel – Hensel lift

- Classes
 - †HenselLiftPair

- $\ \dagger Hensel Lift Multi$
- $-\ \dagger Hensel Lift Simultaneously$
- Functions
 - lift_upto

In this module document, polynomial means integer polynomial.

4.24.1 HenselLiftPair – Hensel lift for a pair

Initialize (Constructor)

 $\begin{aligned} & \text{HenselLiftPair}(\text{f: } polynomial, \, \text{a1: } polynomial, \, \text{a2: } polynomial, \, \text{u1: } polynomial, \, \text{u2: } polynomial, \, \text{u3: } polynomial,$

This object keeps integer polynomial pair which will be lifted by Hensel's lemma.

The argument should satisfy the following preconditions:

- f, a1 and a2 are monic
- $f == a1*a2 \pmod{q}$
- $a1*u1 + a2*u2 == 1 \pmod{p}$
- p divides q and both are positive

This is a class method to create and return an instance of HenselLiftPair. You do not have to precompute u1 and u2 for the default constructor; they will be prepared for you from other arguments.

The argument should satisfy the following preconditions:

- f, al and a2 are monic
- $f == a1*a2 \pmod{p}$
- p is prime

Attributes

point:

factors a1 and a2 as a list.

4.24.1.1 lift – lift one step

$$lift(self) \rightarrow$$

Lift polynomials by so-called the quadratic method.

4.24.1.2 lift factors – lift a1 and a2

 $ext{lift factors(self)}
ightarrow$

Update factors by lifted integer coefficient polynomials Ai's:

- $f == A1 * A2 \pmod{p * q}$
- Ai == ai (mod q) (i = 1, 2)

Moreover, q is updated to p * q.

†The preconditions which should be automatically satisfied:

- $f == a1*a2 \pmod{q}$
- $a1*u1 + a2*u2 == 1 \pmod{p}$
- p divides q

4.24.1.3 lift ladder - lift u1 and u2

 $\mathbf{lift} \quad \mathbf{ladder(self)} \rightarrow$

Update u1 and u2 with U1 and U2:

- $a1*U1 + a2*U2 == 1 \pmod{p**2}$
- Ui == ui (mod p) (i = 1, 2)

Then, update p to p**2.

†The preconditions which should be automatically satisfied:

- $a1*u1 + a2*u2 == 1 \pmod{p}$
- 4.24.2 HenselLiftMulti Hensel lift for multiple polynomials

Initialize (Constructor)

HenselLiftMulti(f: polynomial, factors: list, ladder: tuple, p: integer, q: integer=p)

ightarrow Hensel Lift Multi

This object keeps integer polynomial factors which will be lifted by Hensel's lemma. If the number of factors is just two, then you should use **HenselLift-Pair**.

factors is a list of polynomials; we refer those polynomials as a1, a2, ... ladder is a tuple of two lists sis and tis, both lists consist polynomials. We refer polynomials in sis as s1, s2, ..., and those in tis as t1, t2, ... Moreover, we define bi as the product of aj's for i < j. The argument should satisfy the following preconditions:

- f and all of factors are monic
- f == a1*...*ar (mod q)
- ai*si + bi*ti == 1 (mod p) (i = 1, 2, ..., r)
- p divides q and both are positive

```
\operatorname{from\_factors}(\mathfrak{f}: polynomial, \operatorname{factors}: \mathit{list}, \operatorname{p}: \mathit{integer}) \\ 	o \mathit{HenselLiftMulti}
```

This is a class method to create and return an instance of HenselLiftMulti. You do not have to precompute ladder for the default constructor; they will be prepared for you from other arguments.

The argument should satisfy the following preconditions:

- f and all of factors are monic
- f == a1*...*ar (mod q)
- p is prime

Attributes

point:

factors ais as a list.

4.24.2.1 lift – lift one step

$$lift(self) \rightarrow$$

Lift polynomials by so-called the quadratic method.

 $\mathbf{4.24.2.2} \quad \mathbf{lift_factors} - \mathbf{lift\ factors}$

 $ext{lift factors(self)}
ightarrow$

Update factors by lifted integer coefficient polynomials Ais:

- $f == A1*...*Ar \pmod{p * q}$
- ullet Ai == ai (mod q) $(i=1,\ldots,r)$

Moreover, q is updated to p * q.

†The preconditions which should be automatically satisfied:

- f == a1*...*ar (mod q)
- ullet ai*si + bi*ti == 1 (mod p) $(i=1,\ldots,r)$
- p divides q

4.24.2.3 lift ladder - lift u1 and u2

 $\mathbf{lift} \quad \mathbf{ladder(self)} \rightarrow$

Update sis and tis with Sis and Tis:

- a1*Si + bi*Ti == 1 (mod p**2)
- Si == si (mod p) $(i=1,\ldots,r)$
- ullet Ti == ti (mod p) $(i=1,\ldots,r)$

Then, update p to p**2.

†The preconditions which should be automatically satisfied:

 \bullet ai*si + bi*ti == 1 (mod p) ($i=1,\ldots,r$)

4.24.3 HenselLiftSimultaneously

The method explained in [14]. †Keep these invariants:

```
• ais, pi and gis are monic
```

```
• f == g1*...*gr (mod p)
```

•
$$f == d0 + d1*p + d2*p**2 + ... + dk*p**k$$

• 1 == gi*si + hi*ti (mod p)
$$(i = 1, ..., r)$$

•
$$\deg(\mathtt{si}) < \deg(\mathtt{hi}), \deg(\mathtt{ti}) < \deg(\mathtt{gi}) \ (i = 1, \dots, r)$$

```
• p divides q
```

```
• f == 11*...*lr (mod q/p)
```

$$ullet$$
 ui == ai*yi + bi*zi (mod p) $(i=1,\ldots,r)$

Initialize (Constructor)

HenselLiftSimultaneously(target: polynomial, factors: list, cofactors: list, bases: list, p: integer)

ightarrow Hensel Lift Simultaneously

This object keeps integer polynomial factors which will be lifted by Hensel's lemma.

```
f = target, gi in factors, his in cofactors and sis and tis are in bases.

from factors(target: polynomial, factors: list, p: integer, ubound: integer=sys.maxint)

→ HenselLiftSimultaneously
```

This is a class method to create and return an instance of HenselLiftSimultaneously, whose factors are lifted by <code>HenselLiftMulti</code> upto ubound if it is smaller than <code>sys.maxint</code>, or upto <code>sys.maxint</code> otherwise. You do not have to precompute auxiliary polynomials for the default constructor; they will be prepared for you from other arguments.

f = target, gis in factors.

4.24.3.1 lift – lift one step

```
lift(self) \rightarrow
```

The lift. You should call this method only.

4.24.3.2 first lift – the first step

```
	ext{first} \quad 	ext{lift(self)} 
ightarrow
```

Start lifting.

 $f == 11*12*...*lr \pmod{p**2}$

Initialize dis, uis, yis and zis. Update ais, bis. Then, update q with p**2.

4.24.3.3general lift - next step

```
\mathbf{general} \quad \mathbf{lift}(\mathbf{self}) \rightarrow
```

Continue lifting.

f == a1*a2*...*ar (mod p*q)

Initialize ais, ubis, yis and zis. Then, update q with p*q.

4.24.4 lift upto – main function

```
lift upto(self, target: polynomial, factors: list, p: integer, bound: in-
teger)
```

 $\rightarrow tuple$

Hensel lift factors mod p of target upto bound and return factors mod q and the q itself.

These preconditions should be satisfied:

- target is monic.
- target == product(factors) mod p

The result (factors, q) satisfies the following postconditions:

- there exist k s.t. q == p**k >= bound and
- target == product(factors) mod q

• Classes

- RingPolynomial
- DomainPolynomial
- $-\ Unique Factorization Domain Polynomial$
- OrderProvider
- NestProvider
- PseudoDivisionProvider
- GcdProvider
- RingElementProvider

• Functions

- polynomial

4.25.1 RingPolynomial

General polynomial with commutative ring coefficients.

Initialize (Constructor)

```
\begin{array}{l} \textbf{RingPolynomial(coefficients:} \ \textit{terminit}, \ \textbf{***keywords:} \ \textit{dict}) \\ \rightarrow \textit{RingPolynomial} \end{array}
```

The keywords must include:

coeffring a commutative ring (CommutativeRing)

number of variables the number of variables (integer)

order term order (TermOrder)

This class inherits ${\bf Basic Polynomial}, {\bf Order Provider}, {\bf Nest Provider}$ and ${\bf Ring Element Provider}.$

Attributes

order:

term order.

4.25.1.1 getRing

```
\operatorname{getRing}(\operatorname{self}) 	o 	extit{Ring}
```

Return an object of a subclass of Ring, to which the polynomial belongs. (This method overrides the definition in RingElementProvider)

4.25.1.2 getCoefficientRing

```
\operatorname{getCoefficientRing}(\operatorname{self}) 	o \mathit{Ring}
```

Return an object of a subclass of Ring, to which the all coefficients belong. (This method overrides the definition in RingElementProvider)

4.25.1.3 leading variable

```
leading variable(self) \rightarrow integer
```

Return the position of the leading variable (the leading term among all total degree one terms).

The leading term varies with term orders, so does the result. The term order can be specified via the attribute order.

(This method is inherited from NestProvider)

4.25.1.4 nest

Nest the polynomial by extracting outer variable at the given position. (This method is inherited from NestProvider)

4.25.1.5 unnest

```
nest(self, q: \textit{polynomial}, outer: \textit{integer}, coeffring: \textit{CommutativeRing}) \\ \rightarrow \textit{polynomial}
```

Unnest the nested polynomial q by inserting outer variable at the given position.

(This method is inherited from NestProvider)

4.25.2 DomainPolynomial

Polynomial with domain coefficients.

Initialize (Constructor)

```
The keywords must include:
```

```
coeffring a commutative ring (CommutativeRing)
number_of_variables the number of variables(integer)
order term order (TermOrder)
```

This class inherits RingPolynomial and PseudoDivisionProvider.

Operations

	operator	explanation	
ſ	f / g	division (result is a rational function)	

4.25.2.1 pseudo divmod

pseudo divmod(self, other: polynomial) $\rightarrow polynomial$

Return Q, R polynomials such that:

$$d^{deg(self)-deg(other)+1}self = other \times Q + R$$

w.r.t. a fixed variable, where d is the leading coefficient of other.

The leading coefficient varies with term orders, so does the result. The term order can be specified via the attribute order.

(This method is inherited from PseudoDivisionProvider.)

4.25.2.2 pseudo floordiv

$pseudo floordiv(self, other: polynomial) \rightarrow polynomial$

Return a polynomial Q such that

$$d^{deg(self)-deg(other)+1}self = other \times Q + R$$

w.r.t. a fixed variable, where d is the leading coefficient of other and R is a polynomial.

The leading coefficient varies with term orders, so does the result. The term order can be specified via the attribute order.

(This method is inherited from PseudoDivisionProvider.)

4.25.2.3 pseudo mod

$pseudo \mod(self, other: \textit{polynomial}) \rightarrow \textit{polynomial}$

Return a polynomial R such that

$$d^{deg(self)-deg(other)+1} \times self = other \times Q + R$$

where d is the leading coefficient of other and Q a polynomial.

The leading coefficient varies with term orders, so does the result. The term order can be specified via the attribute order.

(This method is inherited from PseudoDivisionProvider.)

4.25.2.4 exact division

$ext{exact division(self, other: } polynomial) o polynomial$

Return quotient of exact division.

(This method is inherited from PseudoDivisionProvider.)

4.25.3 UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial

Polynomial with unique factorization domain (UFD) coefficients.

Initialize (Constructor)

 $\begin{array}{ll} \textbf{UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial(coefficients:} & \textit{terminit}, \\ **keywords: \textit{dict}) \\ & \rightarrow \textit{UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial} \end{array}$

The keywords must include:

coeffring a commutative ring (CommutativeRing)
number_of_variables the number of variables(integer)
order term order (TermOrder)

This class inherits **DomainPolynomial** and **GcdProvider**.

4.25.3.1 gcd

$\gcd(\mathsf{self}, \, \mathsf{other} \colon polynomial) o polynomial$

Return gcd. The nested polynomials' gcd is used. (This method is inherited from GcdProvider.)

4.25.3.2 resultant

$resultant(self, other: polynomial, var: integer) \rightarrow polynomial$

Return resultant of two polynomials of the same ring, with respect to the variable specified by its position var.

4.25.4 polynomial – factory function for various polynomials

```
\begin{array}{ll} \textbf{polynomial(coefficients:} & \textit{terminit}, & \textbf{coeffring:} & \textit{CommutativeRing}, \\ \textbf{number\_of\_variables:} & \textit{integer}{=} \textbf{None}) \\ & \rightarrow \textit{polynomial} \end{array}
```

Return a polynomial.

†One can override the way to choose a polynomial type from a coefficient ring, by setting:

special_ring_table[coeffring_type] = polynomial_type
before the function call.

4.25.5 prepare_indeterminates - simultaneous declarations of indeterminates

```
egin{align*} 	ext{prepare\_indeterminates(names: } string, 	ext{ ctx: } dict, 	ext{ coeffring: } CoefficientRing=	ext{None}) \ & 	o None \end{aligned}
```

From space separated names of indeterminates, prepare variables representing the indeterminates. The result will be stored in ctx dictionary.

The variables should be prepared at once, otherwise wrong aliases of variables may confuse you in later calculation.

If an optional coeffring is not given, indeterminates will be initialized as integer coefficient polynomials.

Examples

```
>>> prepare_indeterminates("X Y Z", globals())
>>> Y
```

UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial({(0, 1, 0): 1})

4.26 poly.multivar – multivariate polynomial

- Classes
 - $-\ \dagger Polynomial Interface$
 - $\ \dagger Basic Polynomial$
 - TermIndices

4.26.1 PolynomialInterface – base class for all multivariate polynomials

Since the interface is an abstract class, do not instantiate.

4.26.2 BasicPolynomial – basic implementation of polynomial

Basic polynomial data type.

4.26.3 TermIndices – Indices of terms of multivariate polynomials

It is a tuple-like object.

Initialize (Constructor)

 $TermIndices(indices: tuple) \rightarrow TermIndices$

The constructor does not check the validity of indices, such as integerness, nonnegativity, etc.

Operations

operator	explanation
t == u	equality
t != u	inequality
t + u	(componentwise) addition
t - u	(componentwise) subtraction
t * a	(componentwise) multiplication by scalar a
t <= u, t < u, t >= u, t > u	ordering
t[k]	k-th index
len(t)	length
iter(t)	iterator
hash(t)	hash

4.26.3.1 pop

```
pop(self, pos: integer) \rightarrow (integer, TermIndices)
```

Return the index at pos and a new TermIndices object as the omitting-the-pos indices.

$4.26.3.2 \quad \gcd$

```
\gcd(\text{self, other: }\textit{TermIndices}) 
ightarrow \textit{TermIndices}
```

Return the "gcd" of two indices.

4.26.3.3 lcm

$lcm(self, other: \textit{TermIndices}) \rightarrow \textit{TermIndices}$

Return the "lcm" of two indices.

4.27 poly.ratfunc – rational function

• Classes

- RationalFunction

A rational function is a ratio of two polynomials.

Please don't expect this module is useful. It just provides an acceptable container for polynomial division.

4.27.1 RationalFunction – rational function class

Initialize (Constructor)

RationalFunction(numerator: polynomial, denominator: polynomial=1) $\rightarrow RationalFunction$

Make a rational function with the given numerator and denominator. If the numerator is a RationalFunction instance and denominator is not given, then make a copy. If the numerator is a kind of polynomial, then make a rational function whose numerator is the given polynomial. Additionally, if denominator is also given, the denominator is set to its values, otherwise the denominator is 1.

Attributes

numerator:

polynomial.

denominator:

polynomial.

Operations

operator	explanation
A==B	Return whether A and B are equal or not.
str(A)	Return readable string.
repr(A)	Return string representing A's structure.

${\bf 4.27.1.1} \quad {\bf getRing-get\ rational\ function\ field}$

$\mathbf{getRing}(\mathbf{self}) \to \mathbf{RationalFunctionField}$

Return the rational function field to which the rational function belongs.

4.28 poly.ring – polynomial rings

- Classes
 - PolynomialRing
 - $\ {\bf Rational Function Field}$
 - PolynomialIdeal

4.28.1 PolynomialRing - ring of polynomials

A class for uni-/multivariate polynomial rings. A subclass of **CommutativeR-ing**.

Initialize (Constructor)

```
 \begin{array}{l} \textbf{PolynomialRing(coeffring: } \textit{CommutativeRing}, \ \textbf{number\_of\_variables:} \\ \textit{integer}{=}1) \\ \rightarrow \textit{PolynomialRing} \end{array}
```

coeffring is the ring of coefficients. number_of_variables is the number of variables. If its value is greater than 1, the ring is for multivariate polynomials.

Attributes

zero:

zero of the ring.

one:

one of the ring.

4.28.1.1 getInstance - classmethod

 ${\tt getInstance(coeffring:}\ Commutative Ring,\ {\tt number_of_variables:}\ integer)$

 $\rightarrow PolynomialRing$

return the instance of polynomial ring with coefficient ring coeffring and number of variables number_of_variables.

4.28.1.2 getCoefficientRing

 $getCoefficientRing() \rightarrow CommutativeRing$

4.28.1.3 getQuotientField

 $\operatorname{getQuotientField}() o \operatorname{Field}$

4.28.1.4 issubring

issubring(other: Ring) o bool

4.28.1.5 issuperring

issuperring(other: Ring) o bool

4.28.1.6 getCharacteristic

 $getCharacteristic() \rightarrow integer$

4.28.1.7 createElement

$createElement(seed) \rightarrow polynomial$

Return a polynomial. seed can be a polynomial, an element of coefficient ring, or any other data suited for the first argument of uni-/multi-variate polynomials.

4.28.1.8 gcd

$gcd(a, b) \rightarrow polynomial$

Return the greatest common divisor of given polynomials (if possible). The polynomials must be in the polynomial ring. If the coefficient ring is a field, the result is monic.

```
4.28.1.9 isdomain
```

4.28.1.10 iseuclidean

4.28.1.11 isnoetherian

4.28.1.12 ispid

4.28.1.13 isufd

Inherited from CommutativeRing.

4.28.2 RationalFunctionField – field of rational functions Initialize (Constructor)

```
 \begin{array}{c} \textbf{RationalFunctionField(field:} \ \textit{Field}, \ \texttt{number\_of\_variables:} \ \textit{integer}) \\ \rightarrow \ \textit{RationalFunctionField} \end{array}
```

A class for fields of rational functions. It is a subclass of **QuotientField**.

field is the field of coefficients, which should be a **Field** object. number_of_variables is the number of variables.

Attributes

zero:

zero of the field.

one :

one of the field.

4.28.2.1 getInstance – classmethod

```
	ext{getInstance(coefffield: } \textit{Field, number\_of\_variables: } integer) \\ 	o \textit{RationalFunctionField}
```

return the instance of RationalFunctionField with coefficient field coefffield and number of variables number of variables.

4.28.2.2 createElement

```
\textbf{createElement(*seedarg:} \textit{list, **} \textbf{seedkwd:} \textit{dict)} \rightarrow \textit{RationalFunction}
```

4.28.2.3 getQuotientField

```
\operatorname{getQuotientField}() 	o 	extit{Field}
```

4.28.2.4 issubring

```
issubring(other: Ring) \rightarrow bool
```

4.28.2.5 issuperring

```
issuperring(other: Ring) 	o bool
```

4.28.2.6 unnest

```
\mathrm{unnest}() 	o \mathit{RationalFunctionField}
```

If self is a nested RationalFunctionField i.e. its coefficient field is also a RationalFunctionField, then the method returns one level unnested RationalFunctionField. For example:

Examples

```
>>> RationalFunctionField(RationalFunctionField(\mathbb{Q}, 1), 1).unnest() RationalFunctionField(\mathbb{Q}, 2)
```

4.28.2.7 gcd

```
\gcd(\mathtt{a} \colon RationalFunction, \mathtt{b} \colon RationalFunction) 	o RationalFunction
```

Inherited from Field.

- 4.28.2.8 isdomain
- 4.28.2.9 iseuclidean
- 4.28.2.10 isnoetherian
- 4.28.2.11 ispid
- 4.28.2.12 isufd

Inherited from CommutativeRing.

4.28.3 PolynomialIdeal – ideal of polynomial ring

A subclass of Ideal represents ideals of polynomial rings.

Initialize (Constructor)

$\begin{array}{l} \textbf{PolynomialIdeal(generators:} \textit{ list}, \textbf{ polyring:} \textit{ PolynomialRing)} \\ \rightarrow \textit{PolynomialIdeal} \end{array}$

Create an object represents an ideal in a polynomial ring polyring generated by generators.

Operations

operator	explanation
in	membership test
==	same ideal?
!=	different ideal?
+	addition
*	multiplication

4.28.3.1 reduce

reduce(element: polynomial) o polynomial

Modulo element by the ideal.

4.28.3.2 issubset

 ${\tt issubset(other:}~\textit{set}) \rightarrow \textit{bool}$

4.28.3.3 issuperset

 $issuperset(other: \mathit{set}) o \mathit{bool}$

${\bf 4.29 \quad poly.termorder-term\ orders}$

- Classes
 - $-\ \dagger TermOrderInterface$
 - $-\ \dagger Univar Term Order$
 - MultivarTermOrder
- Functions
 - weight_order

4.29.1 TermOrderInterface – interface of term order Initialize (Constructor)

$TermOrderInterface(comparator: function) \rightarrow TermOrderInterface$

A term order is primarily a function, which determines precedence between two terms (or monomials). By the precedence, all terms are ordered.

More precisely in terms of Python, a term order accepts two tuples of integers, each of which represents power indices of the term, and returns 0, 1 or -1 just like cmp built-in function.

A TermOrder object provides not only the precedence function, but also a method to format a string for a polynomial, to tell degree, leading coefficients, etc.

comparator accepts two tuple-like objects of integers, each of which represents power indices of the term, and returns 0, 1 or -1 just like cmp built-in function.

This class is abstract and should not be instantiated. The methods below have to be overridden.

4.29.1.1 cmp

```
	ext{cmp(self, left: } tuple, 	ext{ right: } tuple) 
ightarrow integer
```

Compare two index tuples left and right and determine precedence.

4.29.1.2 format

Return the formatted string of the polynomial polynom.

4.29.1.3 leading coefficient

```
leading coefficient(self, polynom: polynomial) \rightarrow CommutativeRingElement
```

Return the leading coefficient of polynomial polynom with respect to the term order.

4.29.1.4 leading term

```
leading term(self, polynom: polynomial) \rightarrow tuple
```

Return the leading term of polynomial polynom as tuple of (degree index, coefficient) with respect to the term order.

4.29.2 UnivarTermOrder – term order for univariate polynomials

Initialize (Constructor)

```
UnivarTermOrder(comparator: function) \rightarrow UnivarTermOrder
```

There is one unique term order for univariate polynomials. It's known as degree.

One thing special to univariate case is that powers are not tuples but bare integers. According to the fact, method signatures also need be translated from the definitions in TermOrderInterface, but its easy, and we omit some explanations.

comparator can be any callable that accepts two integers and returns 0, 1 or -1 just like cmp, i.e. if they are equal it returns 0, first one is greater 1, and otherwise -1. Theoretically acceptable comparator is only the cmp function.

This class inherits **TermOrderInterface**.

4.29.2.1 format

```
\begin{array}{lll} {\it format(self,\ polynom:\ polynomial,\ varname:\ string='X',\ reverse:\ bool=False)} \\ &\rightarrow string \end{array}
```

Return the formatted string of the polynomial polynom.

- polynom must be a univariate polynomial.
- varname can be set to the name of the variable.
- reverse can be either True or False. If it's True, terms appear in reverse (descending) order.

4.29.2.2 degree

```
degree(self, polynom: polynomial) \rightarrow integer
```

Return the degree of the polynomial polynom.

4.29.2.3 tail degree

```
	ext{tail} \quad 	ext{degree(self, polynom: } polynomial) 
ightarrow integer
```

Return the least degree among all terms of the polynom.

This method is experimental.

4.29.3 MultivarTermOrder – term order for multivariate polynomials

Initialize (Constructor)

```
\operatorname{MultivarTermOrder}(\operatorname{comparator}: \operatorname{\it function}) 	o \operatorname{\it MultivarTermOrder}
```

This class inherits **TermOrderInterface**.

4.29.3.1 format

```
 \begin{array}{lll} {\rm format(self,\ polynom:\ } polynomial,\ varname:\ } tuple = & {\rm None,\ } reverse:\\ bool = & {\rm False,\ }^**{\tt kwds:\ } dict)\\ & \rightarrow string \end{array}
```

Return the formatted string of the polynomial polynom.

An additional argument varnames is required to name variables.

- polynom is a multivariate polynomial.
- varnames is the sequence of the variable names.
- reverse can be either True or False. If it's True, terms appear in reverse (descending) order.

4.29.4 weight order - weight order

```
egin{array}{ll} 	ext{weight}\_	ext{order(weight: } sequence, 	ext{ tie}\_	ext{breaker: } function = 	ext{None)} \ 	o function \end{array}
```

Return a comparator of weight ordering by weight.

Let w denote the weight. The weight ordering is defined for arguments x and y that x < y if $w \cdot x < w \cdot y$ or $w \cdot x == w \cdot y$ and tie breaker tells x < y.

The option tie_breaker is another comparator that will be used if dot products with the weight vector leaves arguments tie. If the option is None (default) and a tie breaker is indeed necessary to order given arguments, a TypeError is raised.

Examples

```
>>> w = termorder.MultivarTermOrder(
... termorder.weight_order((6, 3, 1), cmp))
>>> w.cmp((1, 0, 0), (0, 1, 2))
1
```

4.30 poly.uniutil – univariate utilities

• Classes

- RingPolynomial
- DomainPolynomial
- $-\ Unique Factorization Domain Polynomial$
- IntegerPolynomial
- FieldPolynomial
- FinitePrimeFieldPolynomial
- OrderProvider
- DivisionProvider
- PseudoDivisionProvider
- ContentProvider
- $\ Subresultant Gcd Provider$
- PrimeCharacteristicFunctionsProvider
- VariableProvider
- $\ {\rm RingElementProvider}$

• Functions

- polynomial

4.30.1 RingPolynomial – polynomial over commutative ring

Initialize (Constructor)

RingPolynomial(coefficients: terminit, coeffring: CommutativeRing, **keywords: dict)

 $\rightarrow RingPolynomial \ object$

Initialize a polynomial over the given commutative ring coeffring.

This class inherits from **SortedPolynomial**, **OrderProvider** and **RingElementProvider**.

The type of the coefficients is **terminit**. coeffring is an instance of descendant of **CommutativeRing**.

4.30.1.1 getRing

$$\operatorname{getRing}(\operatorname{self}) o extit{Ring}$$

Return an object of a subclass of Ring, to which the polynomial belongs. (This method overrides the definition in RingElementProvider)

4.30.1.2 getCoefficientRing

$$\operatorname{getCoefficientRing}(\operatorname{self}) o \mathit{Ring}$$

Return an object of a subclass of Ring, to which the all coefficients belong. (This method overrides the definition in RingElementProvider)

$$4.30.1.3$$
 shift_degree_to

$$ext{shift degree to(self, degree: } integer)
ightarrow polynomial$$

Return polynomial whose degree is the given degree. More precisely, let $f(X) = a_0 + ... + a_n X^n$, then f.shift_degree_to(m) returns:

- zero polynomial, if f is zero polynomial
- $a_{n-m} + ... + a_n X^m$, if $0 \le m < n$
- $a_0 X^{m-n} + ... + a_n X^m$, if $m \ge n$

(This method is inherited from OrderProvider)

4.30.1.4 split at

$$split at(self, degree: integer) \rightarrow polynomial$$

Return tuple of two polynomials, which are split at the given degree. The term of the given degree, if exists, belongs to the lower degree polynomial. (This method is inherited from OrderProvider)

4.30.2 DomainPolynomial - polynomial over domain

Initialize (Constructor)

DomainPolynomial(coefficients: terminit, coeffring: CommutativeR-ing, **keywords: dict)

 $ightarrow DomainPolynomial\ object$

Initialize a polynomial over the given domain coeffring.

In addition to the basic polynomial operations, it has pseudo division methods.

This class inherits RingPolynomial and PseudoDivisionProvider.

The type of the coefficients is **terminit**. coeffring is an instance of descendant of **CommutativeRing** which satisfies coeffring.isdomain().

4.30.2.1 pseudo divmod

 $\textbf{pseudo} \quad \textbf{divmod(self, other: } \textit{polynomial)} \rightarrow \textit{tuple}$

Return a tuple (Q, R), where Q, R are polynomials such that:

$$d^{deg(f)-deg(other)+1}f = other \times Q + R,$$

where d is the leading coefficient of other. (This method is inherited from PseudoDivisionProvider)

4.30.2.2 pseudo floordiv

pseudo floordiv(self, other: polynomial) $\rightarrow polynomial$

Return a polynomial Q such that:

$$d^{deg(f)-deg(other)+1}f = other \times Q + R,$$

where d is the leading coefficient of other. (This method is inherited from PseudoDivisionProvider)

4.30.2.3 pseudo mod

 $\mathbf{pseudo} \quad \mathbf{mod}(\mathbf{self}, \, \mathbf{other:} \, \mathit{polynomial}) \, \rightarrow \, \mathit{polynomial}$

Return a polynomial R such that:

$$d^{deg(f)-deg(other)+1}f = other \times Q + R,$$

where d is the leading coefficient of other. (This method is inherited from PseudoDivisionProvider)

4.30.2.4 exact division

 $ext{exact division(self, other: } polynomial)
ightarrow polynomial$

Return quotient of exact division.
(This method is inherited from PseudoDivisionProvider)

4.30.2.5 scalar exact division

 $\begin{array}{c} \text{scalar_exact_division(self, scale: } \textit{CommutativeRingElement)} \\ \rightarrow \textit{polynomial} \end{array}$

Return quotient by scale which can divide each coefficient exactly. (This method is inherited from PseudoDivisionProvider)

4.30.2.6 discriminant

$\operatorname{discriminant}(\operatorname{self}) \to \operatorname{\textit{CommutativeRingElement}}$

Return discriminant of the polynomial.

4.30.2.7 to field polynomial

$$\textbf{to} \hspace{0.2cm} \textbf{field} \hspace{0.2cm} \textbf{polynomial}(\textbf{self}) \rightarrow \textbf{\textit{FieldPolynomial}}$$

Return a FieldPolynomial object obtained by embedding the polynomial ring over the domain D to over the quotient field of D.

4.30.3 UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial – polynomial over UFD

Initialize (Constructor)

 $\begin{array}{ll} \mbox{UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial(coefficients:} & \mbox{\it terminit}, \\ \mbox{coeffring:} & \mbox{\it CommutativeRing, **keywords: } & \mbox{\it dict}) \\ \mbox{\it } \rightarrow & \mbox{\it UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial object} \end{array}$

Initialize a polynomial over the given UFD coeffring.

This class inherits from ${\bf DomainPolynomial}$, ${\bf SubresultantGcdProvider}$ and ${\bf ContentProvider}$.

The type of the coefficients is **terminit**. coeffring is an instance of descendant of **CommutativeRing** which satisfies coeffring.isufd().

4.30.3.1 content

$ext{content(self)} o ext{CommutativeRingElement}$

Return content of the polynomial. (This method is inherited from ContentProvider)

4.30.3.2 primitive part

$ext{primitive part(self)} ightarrow ext{$UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial}$

Return the primitive part of the polynomial. (This method is inherited from ContentProvider)

4.30.3.3 subresultant gcd

subresultant gcd(self, other: polynomial) ightarrow UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial

Return the greatest common divisor of given polynomials. They must be in the polynomial ring and its coefficient ring must be a UFD. (This method is inherited from SubresultantGcdProvider)

Reference: [13] Algorithm 3.3.1

4.30.3.4 subresultant extgcd

$subresultant extgcd(self, other: polynomial) \rightarrow tuple$

Return (A, B, P) s.t. $A \times self + B \times other = P$, where P is the greatest common divisor of given polynomials. They must be in the polynomial ring and its coefficient ring must be a UFD.

Reference: [21]p.18

(This method is inherited from SubresultantGcdProvider)

4.30.3.5 resultant

$resultant(self, other: polynomial) \rightarrow polynomial$

Return the resultant of self and other.

(This method is inherited from SubresultantGcdProvider)

4.30.4 IntegerPolynomial – polynomial over ring of rational integers

Initialize (Constructor)

IntegerPolynomial(coefficients: terminit, coeffring: CommutativeRing, **keywords: dict)

ightarrow IntegerPolynomial object

Initialize a polynomial over the given commutative ring coeffring.

This class is required because special initialization must be done for built-in int/long.

 $This\ class\ inherits\ from\ {\bf Unique Factorization Domain Polynomial}.$

The type of the coefficients is **terminit**. coeffring is an instance of **IntegerRing**. You have to give the rational integer ring, though it seems redundant.

4.30.5 FieldPolynomial – polynomial over field

Initialize (Constructor)

 $\label{eq:field-polynomial} \textbf{Field-Polynomial} (\textbf{coefficients: } \textit{terminit}, \textbf{ coeffring: } \textit{Field, **keywords: } \textit{dict)}$

 $ightarrow FieldPolynomial\ object$

Initialize a polynomial over the given field coeffring.

Since the polynomial ring over field is a Euclidean domain, it provides divisions.

This class inherits from RingPolynomial, DivisionProvider and ContentProvider.

The type of the coefficients is **terminit**. coeffring is an instance of descendant of **Field**.

Operations

operator	explanation
f // g	quotient of floor division
f % g	remainder
divmod(f, g)	quotient and remainder
f/g	division in rational function field

4.30.5.1 content

$content(self) \rightarrow FieldElement$

Return content of the polynomial. (This method is inherited from ContentProvider)

4.30.5.2 primitive part

$ext{primitive part(self)} o ext{polynomial}$

Return the primitive part of the polynomial. (This method is inherited from ContentProvider)

$4.30.5.3 \mod$

$mod(self, dividend: polynomial) \rightarrow polynomial$

Return dividend mod self.
(This method is inherited from DivisionProvider)

4.30.5.4 scalar exact division

```
scalar exact division(self, scale: FieldElement) \rightarrow polynomial
```

Return quotient by scale which can divide each coefficient exactly. (This method is inherited from DivisionProvider)

4.30.5.5 gcd

$\gcd(\text{self, other: } polynomial) \rightarrow polynomial)$

Return a greatest common divisor of self and other.

Returned polynomial is always monic. (This method is inherited from DivisionProvider)

4.30.5.6 extgcd

$\operatorname{extgcd}(\operatorname{self}, \operatorname{other}: \operatorname{\textit{polynomial}}) \to \operatorname{\textit{tuple}}$

Return a tuple (u, v, d); they are the greatest common divisor d of two polynomials self and other and u, v such that

$$d = self \times u + other \times v$$

See extgcd.

(This method is inherited from DivisionProvider)

4.30.6 FinitePrimeFieldPolynomial – polynomial over finite prime field

Initialize (Constructor)

 $Finite Prime Field Polynomial (coefficients: terminit, coeffring: Finite Prime Field, **keywords: dict) \\ \rightarrow Finite Prime Field Polynomial object$

Initialize a polynomial over the given commutative ring coeffring.

This class inherits from FieldPolynomial and PrimeCharacteristicFunctionsProvider.

The type of the coefficients is **terminit**. coeffring is an instance of descendant of **FinitePrimeField**.

4.30.6.1 mod pow – powering with modulus

```
egin{array}{ll} egi
```

Return $polynom^{index} \mod self$.

Note that self is the modulus. (This method is inherited from PrimeCharacteristicFunctionsProvider)

4.30.6.2 pthroot

```
\operatorname{pthroot}(\operatorname{self}) 	o \operatorname{\it polynomial}
```

Return a polynomial obtained by sending X^p to X, where p is the characteristic. If the polynomial does not consist of p-th powered terms only, result is nonsense.

(This method is inherited from PrimeCharacteristicFunctionsProvider)

4.30.6.3 squarefree decomposition

```
	ext{squarefree} 	ext{ decomposition(self)} 	o 	ext{\it dict}
```

Return the square free decomposition of the polynomial.

The return value is a dict whose keys are integers and values are corresponding powered factors. For example, If

Examples

```
>>> A = A1 * A2**2
>>> A.squarefree_decomposition()
{1: A1, 2: A2}.
```

(This method is inherited from PrimeCharacteristicFunctionsProvider)

4.30.6.4 distinct degree decomposition

```
	ext{distinct} \hspace{0.2cm} 	ext{degree} \hspace{0.2cm} 	ext{decomposition(self)} 
ightarrow 	ext{dist}
```

Return the distinct degree factorization of the polynomial.

The return value is a dict whose keys are integers and values are corresponding product of factors of the degree. For example, if $A = A1 \times A2$, and all irreducible

factors of A1 having degree 1 and all irreducible factors of A2 having degree 2, then the result is: $\{1: A1, 2: A2\}$.

The given polynomial must be square free, and its coefficient ring must be a finite field.

(This method is inherited from PrimeCharacteristicFunctionsProvider)

4.30.6.5 split same degrees

```
	ext{split} same degrees(self, degree: ) 	o 	ext{list}
```

Return the irreducible factors of the polynomial.

The polynomial must be a product of irreducible factors of the given degree. (This method is inherited from PrimeCharacteristicFunctionsProvider)

4.30.6.6 factor

```
\mathrm{factor}(\mathrm{self}) 	o \mathit{list}
```

Factor the polynomial.

The returned value is a list of tuples whose first component is a factor and second component is its multiplicity.

(This method is inherited from PrimeCharacteristicFunctionsProvider)

4.30.6.7 isirreducible

```
isirreducible(self) 	o bool
```

If the polynomial is irreducible return True, otherwise False.
(This method is inherited from PrimeCharacteristicFunctionsProvider)

4.30.7 polynomial – factory function for various polynomials

```
 \begin{array}{l} \textbf{polynomial(coefficients:} \ \textit{terminit}, \ \textbf{coeffring:} \ \textit{CommutativeRing)} \\ \rightarrow \textit{polynomial} \end{array}
```

Return a polynomial.

†One can override the way to choose a polynomial type from a coefficient ring, by setting:

special_ring_table[coeffring_type] = polynomial_type
before the function call.

4.31 poly.univar – univariate polynomial

- Classes
 - $-\ \dagger \textbf{Polynomial Interface}$
 - †BasicPolynomial
 - SortedPolynomial

This poly.univar using following type:

polynomial:

polynomial is an instance of some descendant class of **PolynomialInterface** in this context.

4.31.1 PolynomialInterface – base class for all univariate polynomials

Initialize (Constructor)

Since the interface is an abstract class, do not instantiate. The class is derived from **FormalSumContainerInterface**.

Operations

operator	explanation
f * g	multiplication ¹
f ** i	powering

4.31.1.1 differentiate – formal differentiation

```
differentiate(self) \rightarrow polynomial
```

Return the formal differentiation of this polynomial.

4.31.1.2 downshift degree – decreased degree polynomial

```
	ext{downshift} \quad 	ext{degree(self, slide: } integer) 
ightarrow polynomial
```

Return the polynomial obtained by shifting downward all terms with degrees of slide.

Be careful that if the least degree term has the degree less than slide then the result is not mathematically a polynomial. Even in such a case, the method does not raise an exception.

```
†f.downshift_degree(slide) is equivalent to f.upshift degree(-slide).
```

4.31.1.3 upshift degree - increased degree polynomial

```
	ext{upshift} \quad 	ext{degree(self, slide: } integer) 
ightarrow polynomial
```

Return the polynomial obtained by shifting upward all terms with degrees of slide.

```
†f.upshift_degree(slide) is equivalent to f.term_mul((slide, 1)).
```

4.31.1.4 ring_mul - multiplication in the ring

```
	ext{ring} \quad 	ext{mul(self, other: } polynomial) 
ightarrow polynomial
```

Return the result of multiplication with the other polynomial.

4.31.1.5 scalar mul - multiplication with a scalar

```
scalar mul(self, scale: scalar) \rightarrow polynomial
```

Return the result of multiplication by scalar scale.

4.31.1.6 term mul – multiplication with a term

```
	ext{term} \quad 	ext{mul(self, term: } term) 
ightarrow polynomial
```

Return the result of multiplication with the given term. The term can be given as a tuple (degree, coeff) or as a polynomial.

4.31.1.7 square – multiplication with itself

$square(self) \rightarrow polynomial$

Return the square of this polynomial.

4.31.2 BasicPolynomial – basic implementation of polynomial

Basic polynomial data type. There are no concept such as variable name and ring.

Initialize (Constructor)

This class inherits and implements **PolynomialInterface**.

The type of the coefficients is **terminit**.

4.31.3 SortedPolynomial – polynomial keeping terms sorted

Initialize (Constructor)

The class is derived from **PolynomialInterface**.

The type of the coefficients is **terminit**. Optionally _sorted can be **True** if the coefficients is an already sorted list of terms.

4.31.3.1 degree – degree

```
	ext{degree(self)} 
ightarrow integer
```

Return the degree of this polynomial. If the polynomial is the zero polynomial, the degree is -1.

4.31.3.2 leading coefficient – the leading coefficient

$$\textbf{leading coefficient(self)} \rightarrow \textit{object}$$

Return the coefficient of highest degree term.

4.31.3.3 leading term – the leading term

```
\text{leading} \quad \text{term(self)} \rightarrow \textit{tuple}
```

Return the leading term as a tuple (degree, coefficient).

4.31.3.4 †ring mul karatsuba – the leading term

```
{\tt ring\_mul\_karatsuba(self,\,other:}~polynomial) \rightarrow polynomial
```

Multiplication of two polynomials in the same ring. Computation is carried out by Karatsuba method.

This may run faster when degree is higher than 100 or so. It is off by default, if you need to use this, do by yourself.

Bibliography

- [1] IPython. http://ipython.scipy.org/.
- [2] KANT/KASH. http://www.math.tu-berlin.de/~kant/kash.html.
- [3] Magma. http://magma.maths.usyd.edu.au/magma/.
- [4] Maple. http://www.maplesoft.com/.
- [5] Mathematica. http://www.wolfram.com/products/mathematica/.
- [6] matplotlib. http://matplotlib.sourceforge.net/.
- [7] mpmath. http://code.google.com/p/mpmath/.
- [8] NZMATH. http://tnt.math.se.tmu.ac.jp/nzmath/.
- [9] PARI/GP. http://pari.math.u-bordeaux.fr/.
- [10] SIMATH. http://tnt.math.se.tmu.ac.jp/simath/.
- [11] Janice S. Asuncion. Integer factorization using different parameterizations of Montgomery's curves. Master's thesis, Tokyo Metropolitan University, 2006.
- [12] J. Brillhart and J. L. Selfridge. Some factorizations of $2^n \pm 1$ and related results. *Math. Comp.*, Vol. 21, pp. 87–96, 1967.
- [13] Henri Cohen. A Course in Computational Algebraic Number Theory. GTM138. Springer, 1st. edition, 1993.
- [14] G. E. Collins and M. J. Encarnación. Improved techniques for factoring univariate polynomials. *Journal of Symbolic Computation*, Vol. 21, pp. 313–327, 1996.
- [15] Richard Crandall and Carl Pomerance. *Prime Numbers*. Springer, 1st. edition, 2001.
- [16] Ivan Bjerre Damgård and Gudmund Skovbjerg Frandsen. Efficient algorithms for the gcd and cubic residuosity in the ring of Eisenstein integers. Journal of Symbolic Computation, Vol. 39, No. 6, pp. 643–652, 2005.

- [17] D. H. Lehmer. Tests for primality by the converse of Fermat's theorem. Bull. Amer. Math. Soc., Vol. 33, pp. 327–340, 1927.
- [18] H. W. Lenstra, Jr. Miller's primality test. Information processing letters, Vol. 8, No. 2, 1979.
- [19] Lawrence C. Washington. *Elliptic Curves: Number Theory and Cryptog-raphy*. DISCRETE MATHEMATICS AND ITS APPLICATIONS. CRC Press, 1st. edition, 2003.
- [20] André Weiler. (1+i)-ary gcd computation in $\mathbb{Z}[i]$ as an analogue to the binary gcd algorithm. *Journal of Symbolic Computation*, Vol. 30, No. 5, pp. 605–617, 2000.
- [21] Kida Yuuji. Integral basis and decomposition of primes in algebraic fields (Japanese). http://www.rkmath.rikkyo.ac.jp/~kida/intbasis.pdf.